

Package ‘Giotto’

December 2, 2019

Title Spatial single-cell transcriptomics pipeline.

Version 0.1.3

Description Pipeline to process, analyze and visualize (spatial) single-cell expression data.

License MIT + file LICENSE

Encoding UTF-8

LazyData true

RoxygenNote 7.0.1

Depends data.table (>= 1.12.2),
ggplot2 (>= 3.1.1),
base (>= 3.5.1),
utils (>= 3.5.1),
R (>= 3.5.1)

Imports Rtsne (>= 0.15),
uwot (>= 0.0.0.9010),
multinet (>= 3.0.2),
FactoMineR (>= 1.34),
factoextra (>= 1.0.5),
cowplot (>= 0.9.4),
grDevices,
RColorBrewer,
jackstraw (>= 1.3),
dbscan (>= 1.1-3),
ggalluvial (>= 0.9.1),
scales (>= 1.0.0),
ComplexHeatmap (>= 1.20.0),
qvalue (>= 2.14.1),
lfa (>= 1.12.0),
igraph (>= 1.2.4.1),
plotly,
reticulate,
magrittr,
limma,
ggdendro,
smfishHmrf,
matrixStats (>= 0.55.0),
IRanges

Suggests knitr,

rmarkdown,
MAST,
scrna (>= 1.10.1),
png,
tiff

biocViews

VignetteBuilder knitr

Remotes lambdamoses/smfishhmr-r

R topics documented:

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------|----|
| addCellMetadata | 6 |
| addCellStatistics | 7 |
| addGeneMetadata | 8 |
| addGeneStatistics | 9 |
| addHMRF | 10 |
| addNetworkLayout | 10 |
| addStatistics | 11 |
| adjustGiottoMatrix | 12 |
| aes_string2 | 13 |
| allCellCellcommunicationsScores | 13 |
| all_plots_save_function | 14 |
| annotateGiotto | 15 |
| annotateSpatialNetwork | 16 |
| annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D | 17 |
| annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D | 17 |
| average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups | 18 |
| binGetSpatialGenes | 18 |
| calculateHVG | 20 |
| calculateMetaTable | 21 |
| calculateMetaTableCells | 22 |
| calculate_spatial_genes_python | 23 |
| cellProximityBarplot | 24 |
| cellProximityEnrichment | 25 |
| cellProximityHeatmap | 26 |
| cellProximityNetwork | 27 |
| cellProximitySpatPlot | 28 |
| cellProximitySpatPlot2D | 30 |
| cellProximitySpatPlot3D | 32 |
| cellProximityVisPlot | 34 |
| cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot | 36 |
| cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly | 38 |
| cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly | 39 |
| changeGiottoInstructions | 41 |
| clusterCells | 42 |
| combineMetadata | 44 |
| convertSignListToMatrix | 45 |
| createGiottoInstructions | 45 |
| createGiottoObject | 46 |
| createHeatmap_DT | 48 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| createNearestNetwork | 49 |
| createSpatialEnrich | 50 |
| createSpatialGrid | 51 |
| createSpatialGrid_2D | 52 |
| createSpatialGrid_3D | 53 |
| createSpatialNetwork | 54 |
| create_average_detection_DT | 55 |
| create_average_DT | 55 |
| create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs | 56 |
| create_cluster_matrix | 57 |
| create_dimObject | 57 |
| decide_cluster_order | 58 |
| detectSpatialPatterns | 59 |
| dimCellPlot | 60 |
| dimCellPlot2D | 61 |
| dimGenePlot | 64 |
| dimGenePlot2D | 65 |
| dimGenePlot3D | 67 |
| dimPlot2D | 69 |
| dimPlot3D | 71 |
| direction_test_CPG | 74 |
| doHclust | 74 |
| doHMRF | 75 |
| doKmeans | 77 |
| doLeidenCluster | 78 |
| doLeidenSubCluster | 79 |
| doLouvainCluster | 81 |
| doLouvainCluster_community | 82 |
| doLouvainCluster_multinet | 83 |
| doLouvainSubCluster | 84 |
| doLouvainSubCluster_community | 86 |
| doLouvainSubCluster_multinet | 87 |
| doRandomWalkCluster | 89 |
| doSNNCluster | 90 |
| dt_to_matrix | 91 |
| exportGiottoViewer | 91 |
| exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores | 92 |
| extended_gini_fun | 93 |
| extractNearestNetwork | 94 |
| fDataDT | 94 |
| filterCombinations | 95 |
| filterCPGscores | 96 |
| filterDistributions | 97 |
| filterGiotto | 98 |
| findGiniMarkers | 99 |
| findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all | 100 |
| findMarkers | 101 |
| findMarkers_one_vs_all | 102 |
| findMastMarkers | 103 |
| findMastMarkers_one_vs_all | 104 |
| findScranMarkers | 105 |
| findScranMarkers_one_vs_all | 106 |

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| find_grid_2D | 107 |
| find_grid_3D | 107 |
| find_grid_x | 108 |
| find_grid_y | 108 |
| find_grid_z | 108 |
| fish_function | 108 |
| fish_function2 | 109 |
| FSV_show | 109 |
| GenePattern_show | 110 |
| general_save_function | 111 |
| getCellProximityGeneScores | 112 |
| getClusterSimilarity | 114 |
| getDendrogramSplits | 114 |
| getDistinctColors | 115 |
| getGeneToGeneScores | 116 |
| get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion | 117 |
| get_interaction_gene_enrichment | 117 |
| get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment | 118 |
| ggplot_save_function | 118 |
| giotto-class | 120 |
| hyperGeometricEnrich | 120 |
| iterCluster | 121 |
| iterLeidenCluster | 123 |
| iterLouvainCluster | 124 |
| iterLouvainCluster_community | 126 |
| iterLouvainCluster_multinet | 127 |
| kmeans_binarize | 128 |
| loadHMRP | 129 |
| make_simulated_network | 129 |
| mergeClusters | 130 |
| mygini_fun | 131 |
| nnDT_to_kNN | 131 |
| node_clusters | 132 |
| normalizeGiotto | 132 |
| OR_function2 | 133 |
| PAGEEnrich | 134 |
| pDataDT | 135 |
| plotCPGscores | 135 |
| plotGTGscores | 136 |
| plotHeatmap | 138 |
| plotly_axis_scale_2D | 139 |
| plotly_axis_scale_3D | 140 |
| plotly_grid | 141 |
| plotly_network | 141 |
| plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap | 142 |
| plotMetaDataHeatmap | 144 |
| plotPCA | 146 |
| plotPCA_2D | 147 |
| plotPCA_3D | 149 |
| plotTSNE | 151 |
| plotTSNE_2D | 152 |
| plotTSNE_3D | 154 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| plotUMAP | 156 |
| plotUMAP_2D | 157 |
| plotUMAP_3D | 159 |
| plot_network_layer_ggplot | 161 |
| plot_point_layer_ggplot | 161 |
| plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot | 163 |
| print.giotto | 165 |
| rankEnrich | 166 |
| rank_binarize | 167 |
| readGiottoInstructions | 167 |
| removeCellAnnotation | 168 |
| removeGeneAnnotation | 168 |
| replaceGiottoInstructions | 169 |
| runPCA | 169 |
| runSNE | 170 |
| runUMAP | 171 |
| selectPatternGenes | 173 |
| select_expression_values | 174 |
| show,giotto-method | 174 |
| showClusterDendrogram | 174 |
| showClusterHeatmap | 176 |
| showCPGscores | 177 |
| showGeneExpressionProximityScore | 178 |
| showGiottoInstructions | 179 |
| showGTGscores | 179 |
| showIntExpressionProximityScore | 180 |
| showPattern | 181 |
| showPattern2D | 182 |
| showPattern3D | 183 |
| showPatternGenes | 185 |
| showProcessingSteps | 186 |
| showTopGeneToGene | 186 |
| signPCA | 187 |
| spatCellPlot | 188 |
| spatCellPlot2D | 190 |
| spatDimCellPlot | 193 |
| spatDimCellPlot2D | 195 |
| spatDimGenePlot | 199 |
| spatDimGenePlot2D | 201 |
| spatDimGenePlot3D | 203 |
| spatDimPlot | 205 |
| spatDimPlot2D | 208 |
| spatDimPlot3D | 212 |
| spatGenePlot | 215 |
| spatGenePlot2D | 216 |
| spatGenePlot3D | 218 |
| Spatial_AEH | 220 |
| Spatial_DE | 221 |
| spatPlot | 222 |
| spatPlot2D | 224 |
| spatPlot3D | 226 |
| specificCellCellcommunicationScores | 228 |

| | |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| split_dendrogram_in_two | 229 |
| stitchFieldCoordinates | 230 |
| subClusterCells | 231 |
| subsetGiotto | 233 |
| viewHMRFresults | 233 |
| viewHMRFresults2D | 234 |
| viewHMRFresults3D | 235 |
| violinPlot | 236 |
| visDimGenePlot | 237 |
| visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot | 239 |
| visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly | 240 |
| visDimPlot | 242 |
| visDimPlot_2D_ggplot | 244 |
| visDimPlot_2D_plotly | 246 |
| visDimPlot_3D_plotly | 248 |
| visForceLayoutPlot | 249 |
| visGenePlot | 251 |
| visGenePlot_2D_ggplot | 253 |
| visGenePlot_3D_plotly | 254 |
| visPlot | 256 |
| visPlot_2D_ggplot | 258 |
| visPlot_2D_plotly | 261 |
| visPlot_3D_plotly | 262 |
| visSpatDimGenePlot | 264 |
| visSpatDimGenePlot_2D | 267 |
| visSpatDimGenePlot_3D | 269 |
| visSpatDimPlot | 271 |
| visSpatDimPlot_2D | 273 |
| visSpatDimPlot_3D | 276 |
| writeHMRFresults | 278 |
| write_giotto_viewer_annotation | 278 |
| write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction | 279 |

Index**280**

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| addCellMetadata | <i>addCellMetadata</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------|

Description

adds cell metadata to the giotto object

Usage

```
addCellMetadata(
  gobject,
  new_metadata,
  by_column = FALSE,
  column_cell_ID = NULL
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>new_metadata</code> | new cell metadata to use (data.table, data.frame, ...) |
| <code>by_column</code> | merge metadata based on cell_ID column in pDataDT (default = FALSE) |
| <code>column_cell_ID</code> | column name of new metadata to use if by_column = TRUE |

Details

You can add additional cell metadata in two manners: 1. Provide a data.table or data.frame with cell annotations in the same order as the cell_ID column in pDataDT(gobject) 2. Provide a data.table or data.frame with cell annotations and specify which column contains the cell IDs, these cell IDs need to match with the cell_ID column in pDataDT(gobject)

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
addCellMetadata(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>addCellStatistics</code> | <i>addCellStatistics</i> |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|

Description

adds cells statistics to the giotto object

Usage

```
addCellStatistics(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>detection_threshold</code> | detection threshold to consider a gene detected |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

Details

This function will add the following statistics to cell metadata:

- `nr_genes`: Denotes in how many genes are detected per cell
- `perc_genes`: Denotes what percentage of genes is detected per cell
- `total_expr`: Shows the total sum of gene expression per cell

Value

giotto object if `return_gobject = TRUE`

Examples

```
addCellStatistics(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| <code>addGeneMetadata</code> | <i>addGeneMetadata</i> |
|------------------------------|------------------------|

Description

adds gene metadata to the giotto object

Usage

```
addGeneMetadata(gobject, new_metadata, by_column = F, column_gene_ID = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>new_metadata</code> | new metadata to use |
| <code>by_column</code> | merge metadata based on <code>gene_ID</code> column in <code>fDataDT</code> |
| <code>column_cell_ID</code> | column name of new metadata to use if <code>by_column = TRUE</code> |

Details

You can add additional gene metadata in two manners: 1. Provide a `data.table` or `data.frame` with gene annotations in the same order as the `gene_ID` column in `fDataDT(gobject)` 2. Provide a `data.table` or `data.frame` with gene annotations and specify which column contains the gene IDs, these gene IDs need to match with the `gene_ID` column in `fDataDT(gobject)`

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
addGeneMetadata(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| addGeneStatistics | <i>addGeneStatistics</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

adds gene statistics to the giotto object

Usage

```
addGeneStatistics(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  detection_threshold = 0,  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| detection_threshold | detection threshold to consider a gene detected |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

Details

This function will add the following statistics to gene metadata:

- `nr_cells`: Denotes in how many cells the gene is detected
- `per_cells`: Denotes in what percentage of cells the gene is detected
- `total_expr`: Shows the total sum of gene expression in all cells
- `mean_expr`: Average gene expression in all cells
- `mean_expr_det`: Average gene expression in cells with detectable levels of the gene

Value

giotto object if `return_gobject = TRUE`

Examples

```
addGeneStatistics(gobject)
```

addHMRF

addHMRF

Description

Add selected results from doHMRF to the giotto object

Usage

```
addHMRF(gobject, HMRFoutput, k = NULL, betas_to_add = NULL, hmr_name = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| HMRFoutput | HMRF output from doHMRF() |
| k | number of domains |
| betas_to_add | results from different betas that you want to add |
| name | specify a custom name |

Details

Description ...

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
addHMRF(gobject)
```

addNetworkLayout

addNetworkLayout

Description

Add a network layout for a selected nearest neighbor network

Usage

```
addNetworkLayout(
  gobject,
  nn_network_to_use = NULL,
  network_name = NULL,
  layout_type = c("drl"),
  options_list = NULL,
  layout_name = "layout",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | kNN or sNN |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to be used |
| <code>layout_type</code> | layout algorithm to use |
| <code>options_list</code> | list of options for selected layout |
| <code>layout_name</code> | name for layout |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

Details

Description of layouts and options.

Value

giotto object with updated layout for selected NN network

Examples

```
addNetworkLayout(gobject)
```

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| <code>addStatistics</code> | <i>addStatistics</i> |
|----------------------------|----------------------|

Description

adds genes and cells statistics to the giotto object

Usage

```
addStatistics(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>detection_threshold</code> | detection threshold to consider a gene detected |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

Details

See [addGeneStatistics](#) and [addCellStatistics](#)

Value

giotto object if return_gobject = TRUE, else a list with results

Examples

```
addStatistics(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| adjustGiottoMatrix | <i>adjustGiottoMatrix</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

normalize and/or scale expresion values of Giotto object

Usage

```
adjustGiottoMatrix(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  batch_columns = NULL,
  covariate_columns = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  update_slot = c("custom")
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| batch_columns | metadata columns that represent different batch (max = 2) |
| covariate_columns | metadata columns that represent covariates to regress out |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| update_slot | expression slot that will be updated (default = custom) |

Details

This function implements the [limma::removeBatchEffect](#) function to remove known batch effects and to adjust expression values according to provided covariates.

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
adjustGiottoMatrix(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| aes_string2 | <i>aes_string2</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

makes sure aes_string can also be used with names that start with numeric values

Usage

```
aes_string2(...)
```

| | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| allCellCellcommunicationsScores | <i>allCellCellcommunicationsScores</i> |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------|

Description

All Cell-Cell communication scores based on spatial expression of interacting cells

Usage

```
allCellCellcommunicationsScores(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  random_iter = 100,
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2,
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,
  min_observations = 2,
  verbose = c("a little", "a lot", "none")
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object to use |
| spatial_network_name | spatial network to use for identifying interacting cells |
| cluster_column | cluster column with cell type information |
| random_iter | number of iterations |
| gene_set_1 | first specific gene set from gene pairs |
| gene_set_2 | second specific gene set from gene pairs |
| log2FC_addendum | addendum to add when calculating log2FC |
| min_observations | minimum number of interactions needed to be considered |
| verbose | verbose |

Details

Details will follow.

Value

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on spatial interaction

Examples

```
allCellCellcommunicationsScores(gobject)
```

```
all_plots_save_function
```

```
all_plots_save_function
```

Description

Function to automatically save plots to directory of interest

Usage

```
all_plots_save_function(  
  gobject,  
  plot_object,  
  save_dir = NULL,  
  save_folder = NULL,  
  save_name = NULL,  
  default_save_name = "giotto_plot",  
  save_format = NULL,  
  show_saved_plot = F,  
  ncol = 1,  
  nrow = 1,  
  scale = 1,  
  base_width = NULL,  
  base_height = NULL,  
  base_aspect_ratio = NULL,  
  units = NULL,  
  dpi = NULL,  
  limitsize = TRUE,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| plot_object | object to plot |
| save_dir | directory to save to |
| save_folder | folder in save_dir to save to |
| save_name | name of plot |

| | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| save_format | format (e.g. png, tiff, pdf, ...) |
| show_saved_plot | load & display the saved plot |
| ncol | number of columns |
| nrow | number of rows |
| scale | scale |
| base_width | width |
| base_height | height |
| base_aspect_ratio | aspect ratio |
| units | units |
| dpi | Plot resolution |
| limitsize | When TRUE (the default), ggsave will not save images larger than 50x50 inches, to prevent the common error of specifying dimensions in pixels. |
| ... | additional parameters to ggplot_save_function or general_save_function |

See Also

[Giotto::general_save_function](#)

Examples

```
all_plots_save_function(gobject)
```

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| annotateGiotto | <i>annotateGiotto</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------|

Description

Converts cluster results into provided annotation.

Usage

```
annotateGiotto(
  gobject,
  annotation_vector = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  name = "cell_types"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| annotation_vector | named annotation vector (names = cluster ids) |
| cluster_column | cluster column to convert to annotation names |
| name | new name for annotation column |

Details

You need to specify which (cluster) column you want to annotate and you need to provide an annotation vector like this:

- 1. identify the cell type of each cluster
- 2. create a vector of these cell types, e.g. `cell_types = c('T-cell', 'B-cell', 'Stromal')`
- 3. provide original cluster names to previous vector, e.g. `names(cell_types) = c(2, 1, 3)`

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
annotateGiotto(gobject)
```

```
annotateSpatialNetwork
```

```
annotateSpatialNetwork
```

Description

Annotate spatial network with cell metadata information.

Usage

```
annotateSpatialNetwork(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  cluster_column
)
```

Arguments

```
gobject          giotto object
spatial_network_name
                  name of spatial network to use
cluster_column  name of column to use for clusters
```

Value

annotated network in data.table format

Examples

```
annotateSpatialNetwork(gobject)
```

```

annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D
    annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D

```

Description

annotate spatial locations with 2D spatial grid information

Usage

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D(spatloc, spatgrid)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------|
| spatloc | spatial_locs slot from giotto object |
| spatgrid | selected spatial_grid slot from giotto object |

Value

annotated spatial location data.table

Examples

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D()
```

```

annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D
    annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D

```

Description

annotate spatial locations with 3D spatial grid information

Usage

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D(spatloc, spatgrid)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------|
| spatloc | spatial_locs slot from giotto object |
| spatgrid | selected spatial_grid slot from giotto object |

Value

annotated spatial location data.table

Examples

```
annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D()
```

```
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups
      average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups
```

Description

calculate average expression per cluster

Usage

```
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column with cell type information |
| <code>gene_set_1</code> | first specific gene set from gene pairs |
| <code>gene_set_2</code> | second specific gene set from gene pairs |

Details

Details will follow.

Value

data.table with average expression scores for each cluster

Examples

```
average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups(gobject)
```

```
binGetSpatialGenes      binGetSpatialGenes
```

Description

Rapid computation of genes that are spatially clustered

Usage

```
binGetSpatialGenes(
  gobject,
  bin_method = c("kmeans", "rank"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  nstart = 3,
  iter_max = 10,
  percentage_rank = 10,
  do_fisher_test = F,
  community_expectation = 5,
  verbose = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>bin_method</code> | method to binarize gene expression |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use (default = 'spatial_network') |
| <code>nstart</code> | kmeans: nstart parameter |
| <code>iter_max</code> | kmeans: iter.max parameter |
| <code>do_fisher_test</code> | perform fisher test |
| <code>community_expectation</code> | cell degree expectation in spatial communities |
| <code>verbose</code> | be verbose |
| <code>rank_percentage</code> | percentage of top cells for binarization |

Details

We provide two ways to identify spatial genes based on gene expression binarization. Both methods are identical except for how binarization is performed.

- 1. binarize: Each gene is binarized (0 or 1) in each cell with **kmeans** ($k = 2$) or based on **rank** percentile
- 2. network: All cells are connected through a k-nearest neighbor network
- 3. contingency table: A contingency table is calculated based on all pairwise cell-cell interactions (0-0, 0-1, 1-0 or 1-1)
- 4. For each gene an odds-ratio (OR) and fisher.test (optional) is calculated

Additionally 2 other statistics are provided:

- Number of cells with high expression (binary = 1)
- total and ratio of highly connected cells: Cells with a connectivity higher than community_expectation

Value

data.table with results (see details)

Examples

```
binGetSpatialGenes(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------|---------------------|
| calculateHVG | <i>calculateHVG</i> |
|--------------|---------------------|

Description

compute highly variable genes

Usage

```
calculateHVG(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  method = c("cov_groups", "cov_loess"),  
  reverse_log_scale = FALSE,  
  logbase = 2,  
  expression_threshold = 0,  
  nr_expression_groups = 20,  
  zscore_threshold = 1.5,  
  HVGname = "hvg",  
  difference_in_cov = 0.1,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "HVGplot",  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

- gobject giotto object
- expression_values expression values to use
- method method to calculate highly variable genes
- reverse_log_scale reverse log-scale of expression values (default = FALSE)
- logbase if reverse_log_scale is TRUE, which log base was used?
- expression_threshold expression threshold to consider a gene detected
- nr_expression_groups number of expression groups for cov_groups
- zscore_threshold zscore to select hvg for cov_groups

HVGname name for highly variable genes in cell metadata
 difference_in_cov minimum difference in coefficient of variance required
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
 return_gobject boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)

Details

Currently we provide 2 ways to calculate highly variable genes: **1. high coeff of variance (COV) within groups:**

First genes are binned (*nr_expression_groups*) into average expression groups and the COV for each gene is converted into a z-score within each bin. Genes with a z-score higher than the threshold (*zscore_threshold*) are considered highly variable.

2. high COV based on loess regression prediction:

A predicted COV is calculated for each gene using loess regression ($COV \sim \log(\text{mean expression})$). Genes that show a higher than predicted COV (*difference_in_cov*) are considered highly variable.

Value

giotto object highly variable genes appended to gene metadata (fDataDT)

Examples

```
calculateHVG(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| calculateMetaTable | <i>calculateMetaTable</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

calculates the average gene expression for one or more (combined) annotation columns.

Usage

```
calculateMetaTable(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  metadata_cols = NULL,  
  selected_genes = NULL  
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
 expression_values expression values to use
 metadata_cols annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject)
 selected_genes subset of genes to use

Value

data.table with average expression values for each gene per (combined) annotation

Examples

```
calculateMetaTable(gobject)
```

```
calculateMetaTableCells
      calculateMetaTableCells
```

Description

calculates the average metadata values for one or more (combined) annotation columns.

Usage

```
calculateMetaTableCells(
  gobject,
  value_cols = NULL,
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  spat_enr_names = NULL
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object
 value_cols metadata or enrichment value columns to use
 metadata_cols annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject)
 spat_enr_names which spatial enrichment results to include

Value

data.table with average metadata values per (combined) annotation

Examples

```
calculateMetaTableCells(gobject)
```

```
calculate_spatial_genes_python  
    calculate_spatial_genes_python
```

Description

Calculate spatial genes using distance matrix.

Usage

```
calculate_spatial_genes_python(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  metric = "euclidean",  
  subset_genes = NULL,  
  rbp_p = 0.95,  
  examine_top = 0.3,  
  python_path = NULL  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>metric</code> | distance metric to use |
| <code>subset_genes</code> | only run on this subset of genes |
| <code>rbp_p</code> | fractional binarization threshold |
| <code>examine_top</code> | top fraction to evaluate with silhouette |
| <code>python_path</code> | specify specific path to python if required |

Details

Description of how we compute spatial pattern genes.

Value

data.table with spatial scores

Examples

```
calculate_spatial_genes_python(gobject)
```

 cellProximityBarplot *cellProximityBarplot*

Description

Create barplot from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
cellProximityBarplot(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  min_orig_ints = 5,
  min_sim_ints = 5,
  p_val = 0.05,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximityBarplot"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>CPscore</code> | CPscore, output from <code>cellProximityEnrichment()</code> |
| <code>min_orig_ints</code> | filter on minimum original cell-cell interactions |
| <code>min_sim_ints</code> | filter on minimum simulated cell-cell interactions |
| <code>p_val</code> | p-value |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |

Details

This function creates a barplot that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

```
cellProximityBarplot(CPscore)
```

```
cellProximityEnrichment  
    cellProximityEnrichment
```

Description

Compute cell-cell interaction enrichment (observed vs expected)

Usage

```
cellProximityEnrichment(  
  gobject,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  cluster_column,  
  number_of_simulations = 100  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | name of column to use for clusters |
| <code>number_of_simulations</code> | number of simulations to create expected observations |

Details

Spatial proximity enrichment or depletion between pairs of cell types is calculated by calculating the observed over the expected frequency of cell-cell proximity interactions. The expected frequency is the average frequency calculated from a number of spatial network simulations. Each individual simulation is obtained by random permutations of the cell type labels of each node (cell) in the spatial network.

Value

List of cell Proximity scores (CPscores) in data.table format. The first data.table (`raw_sim_table`) shows the raw observations of both the original and simulated networks. The second data.table (`enrichm_res`) shows the enrichment results.

Examples

```
cellProximityEnrichment(gobject)
```

 cellProximityHeatmap *cellProximityHeatmap*

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
cellProximityHeatmap(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  scale = T,
  order_cell_types = T,
  color_breaks = NULL,
  color_names = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximityHeatmap"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>CPscore</code> | CPscore, output from <code>cellProximityEnrichment()</code> |
| <code>scale</code> | scale cell-cell proximity interaction scores |
| <code>order_cell_types</code> | order cell types based on enrichment correlation |
| <code>color_breaks</code> | numerical vector of length 3 to represent min, mean and maximum |
| <code>color_names</code> | character color vector of length 3 |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |

Details

This function creates a heatmap that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

Value

ggplot heatmap

Examples

```
cellProximityHeatmap(CPscore)
```

```
cellProximityNetwork    cellProximityNetwork
```

Description

Create network from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
cellProximityNetwork(
  gobject,
  CPscore,
  remove_self_edges = FALSE,
  self_loop_strength = 0.1,
  color_depletion = "lightgreen",
  color_enrichment = "red",
  rescale_edge_weights = TRUE,
  edge_weight_range_depletion = c(0.1, 1),
  edge_weight_range_enrichment = c(1, 5),
  layout = "Fruchterman",
  only_show_enrichment_edges = F,
  edge_width_range = c(0.1, 2),
  node_size = 4,
  node_text_size = 6,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximityNetwork"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| CPscore | CPscore, output from cellProximityEnrichment() |
| remove_self_edges | remove enrichment/depletion edges with itself |
| self_loop_strength | size of self-loops |
| color_depletion | color for depleted cell-cell interactions |
| color_enrichment | color for enriched cell-cell interactions |
| rescale_edge_weights | rescale edge weights (boolean) |
| edge_weight_range_depletion | numerical vector of length 2 to rescale depleted edge weights |

| | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| edge_weight_range_enrichment | numerical vector of length 2 to rescale enriched edge weights |
| layout | layout algorithm to use to draw nodes and edges |
| only_show_enrichment_edges | show only the enriched pairwise scores |
| edge_width_range | range of edge width |
| node_size | size of nodes |
| node_text_size | size of node labels |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

This function creates a network that shows the spatial proximity enrichment or depletion of cell type pairs.

Value

igraph plot

Examples

```
cellProximityNetwork(CPscore)
```

cellProximitySpatPlot *cellProximitySpatPlot*

Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
cellProximitySpatPlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| interaction_name | cell-cell interaction name |
| cluster_column | cluster column with cell clusters |
| sdimx | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| sdimy | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| show_other_cells | decide if show cells not in network |
| show_network | show underlying spatial network |
| network_color | color of spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |
| show_legend | show legend |
| point_size_select | size of selected points |
| point_select_border_col | border color of selected points |
| point_select_border_stroke | stroke size of selected points |
| point_size_other | size of other points |
| point_other_border_col | border color of other points |
| point_other_border_stroke | stroke size of other points |
| show_plot | show plots |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[cellProximitySpatPlot2D](#) and [cellProximitySpatPlot3D](#) for 3D

Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot(gobject)
```

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D
```

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D
```

Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_select_border_col = "black",
  point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
  point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximitySpatPlot2D"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| interaction_name | cell-cell interaction name |

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cluster_column | cluster column with cell clusters |
| sdimx | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| sdimy | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| show_other_cells | decide if show cells not in network |
| show_network | show underlying spatial network |
| network_color | color of spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |
| show_legend | show legend |
| point_size_select | size of selected points |
| point_select_border_col | border color of selected points |
| point_select_border_stroke | stroke size of selected points |
| point_size_other | size of other points |
| point_other_border_col | border color of other points |
| point_other_border_stroke | stroke size of other points |
| show_plot | show plots |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D(gobject)
```

```
cellProximitySpatPlot3D
```

```
cellProximitySpatPlot2D
```

Description

Visualize 3D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
cellProximitySpatPlot3D(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = T,
  show_network = T,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 4,
  point_size_other = 2,
  point_alpha_other = 0.5,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "cellProximitySpatPlot3D",
  ...
)
```


Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>interaction_name</code> | cell-cell interaction name |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column with cell clusters |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>sdimz</code> | z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz') |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | decide if show cells not in network |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>grid_color</code> | color of spatial grid |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>point_size_select</code> | size of selected points |
| <code>point_size_other</code> | size of other points |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plots |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return plotly object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
cellProximitySpatPlot3D(gobject)
```

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| cellProximityVisPlot | <i>cellProximityVisPlot</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|

Description

Visualize cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_select_border_col = "black",
  point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
  point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>interaction_name</code> | cell-cell interaction name |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column with cell clusters |

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| sdimx | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| sdimy | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| sdimz | z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz') |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| show_network | show underlying spatial network |
| network_color | color of spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |
| show_legend | show legend |
| point_size_select | size of selected points |
| point_select_border_col | border color of selected points |
| point_select_border_stroke | stroke size of selected points |
| point_size_other | size of other points |
| point_other_border_col | border color of other points |
| point_other_border_stroke | stroke size of other points |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot(gobject)
```

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot
      cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot
```

Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  coord_fix_ratio = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_select_border_col = "black",
  point_select_border_stroke = 0.05,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  point_other_border_col = "lightgrey",
  point_other_border_stroke = 0.01,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>interaction_name</code> | cell-cell interaction name |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column with cell clusters |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| show_other_cells | decide if show cells not in network |
| show_network | show underlying spatial network |
| network_color | color of spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |
| show_legend | show legend |
| point_size_select | size of selected points |
| point_select_border_col | border color of selected points |
| point_select_border_stroke | stroke size of selected points |
| point_size_other | size of other points |
| point_other_border_col | border color of other points |
| point_other_border_stroke | stroke size of other points |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly
      cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly
```

Description

Visualize 2D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  show_other_cells = F,
  show_network = F,
  show_other_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  show_legend = T,
  point_size_select = 2,
  point_size_other = 1,
  point_alpha_other = 0.3,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>interaction_name</code> | cell-cell interaction name |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column with cell clusters |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| show_other_cells | decide if show cells not in network |
| show_network | show underlying spatial network |
| network_color | color of spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| show_legend | show legend |
| point_size_select | size of selected points |
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly(gobject)
```

```
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly
      cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly
```

Description

Visualize 3D cell-cell interactions according to spatial coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  interaction_name = NULL,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
```

```

color_as_factor = T,
show_other_cells = F,
show_network = F,
show_other_network = F,
network_color = NULL,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
show_grid = F,
grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
show_legend = T,
point_size_select = 2,
point_size_other = 1,
point_alpha_other = 0.5,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
...
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>interaction_name</code> | cell-cell interaction name |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column with cell clusters |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>sdimz</code> | z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz') |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | decide if show cells not in network |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>grid_color</code> | color of spatial grid |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>point_size_select</code> | size of selected points |
| <code>coord_fix_ratio</code> | fix ratio between x and y-axis |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

changeGiottoInstructions
changeGiottoInstructions

Description

Function to change one or more instructions from giotto object

Usage

```
changeGiottoInstructions(  
  gobject,  
  params = NULL,  
  new_values = NULL,  
  return_gobject = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| params | parameter(s) to change |
| new_values | new value(s) for parameter(s) |
| return_gobject | (boolean) return giotto object |

Value

named vector with giotto instructions

Examples

```
changeGiottoInstructions()
```

clusterCells

*clusterCells***Description**

cluster cells using a NN-network and community detection algorithms

Usage

```
clusterCells(
  gobject,
  cluster_method = c("leiden", "louvain_community", "louvain_multinet", "randomwalk",
    "sNNclust", "kmeans", "hierarchical"),
  name = "cluster_name",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  pyth_leid_resolution = 1,
  pyth_leid_weight_col = "weight",
  pyth_leid_part_type = c("RBConfigurationVertexPartition", "ModularityVertexPartition"),
  pyth_leid_init_memb = NULL,
  pyth_leid_iterations = 1000,
  pyth_louv_resolution = 1,
  pyth_louv_weight_col = NULL,
  python_louv_random = F,
  python_path = NULL,
  louvain_gamma = 1,
  louvain_omega = 1,
  walk_steps = 4,
  walk_clusters = 10,
  walk_weights = NA,
  sNNclust_k = 20,
  sNNclust_eps = 4,
  sNNclust_minPts = 16,
  borderPoints = TRUE,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  distance_method = c("original", "pearson", "spearman", "euclidean", "maximum",
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),
  km_centers = 10,
  km_iter_max = 100,
  km_nstart = 1000,
  km_algorithm = "Hartigan-Wong",
  hc_agglomeration_method = c("ward.D2", "ward.D", "single", "complete", "average",
    "mcquitty", "median", "centroid"),
  hc_k = 10,
  hc_h = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
```

```

        seed_number = 1234,
        ...
    )

```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| cluster_method | community cluster method to use |
| name | name for new clustering result |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use |
| pyth_leid_resolution | resolution for leiden |
| pyth_leid_weight_col | column to use for weights |
| pyth_leid_part_type | partition type to use |
| pyth_leid_init_memb | initial membership |
| pyth_leid_iterations | number of iterations |
| pyth_louv_resolution | resolution for louvain |
| pyth_louv_weight_col | python louvain param: weight column |
| python_louv_random | python louvain param: random |
| python_path | specify specific path to python if required |
| louvain_gamma | louvain param: gamma or resolution |
| louvain_omega | louvain param: omega |
| walk_steps | randomwalk: number of steps |
| walk_clusters | randomwalk: number of clusters |
| walk_weights | randomwalk: weight column |
| sNNclust_k | SNNclust: k neighbors to use |
| sNNclust_eps | SNNclust: epsilon |
| sNNclust_minPts | SNNclust: min points |
| borderPoints | SNNclust: border points |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| genes_to_use | = NULL, |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | name of reduction 'pca', |

| | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| dimensions_to_use | dimensions to use |
| distance_method | distance method |
| km_centers | kmeans centers |
| km_iter_max | kmeans iterations |
| km_nstart | kmeans random starting points |
| km_algorithm | kmeans algorithm |
| hc_agglomeration_method | hierarchical clustering method |
| hc_k | hierachical number of clusters |
| hc_h | hierarchical tree cutoff |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| set_seed | set seed |
| seed_number | number for seed |
| ... | additional parameters |

Details

Description of different clustering methods.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
clusterCells(gobject)
```

combineMetadata

combineMetadata

Description

This function combines the cell metedata with spatial enrichment results from createSpatialEnrich

Usage

```
combineMetadata(gobject, spat_enr_names = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| gobject | Giotto object |
| spat_enr_names | names of spatial enrichment results |

Value

Extended cell metadata in data.table format.

Examples

```
combineMetadata(gobject)
```

```
convertSignListToMatrix
```

convertSignListToMatrix

Description

Function to convert list of signature genes (e.g. for cell types) into a binary matrix format that can be used with the PAGE enrichment option.

Usage

```
convertSignListToMatrix(sign_names, sign_list)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| sign_names | vector with names for each provided gene signature |
| sign_list | list of gene signatures |

Value

matrix

Examples

```
convertSignListToMatrix()
```

```
createGiottoInstructions
```

createGiottoInstructions

Description

Function to set global instructions for giotto functions

Usage

```
createGiottoInstructions(  
  python_path = NULL,  
  show_plot = NULL,  
  return_plot = NULL,  
  save_plot = NULL,  
  save_dir = NULL,  
  plot_format = NULL,  
  dpi = NULL,  
  units = NULL,  
  height = NULL,  
  width = NULL  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|------------------------------------------|
| python_path | path to python binary to use |
| show_plot | print plot to console, default = TRUE |
| return_plot | return plot as object, default = TRUE |
| save_plot | automatically save plot, default = FALSE |
| save_dir | path to directory where to save plots |
| dpi | resolution for raster images |
| height | height of plots |
| width | width of plots |

Value

named vector with giotto instructions

Examples

```
createGiottoInstructions()
```

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| createGiottoObject | <i>create Giotto object</i> |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|

Description

Function to create a giotto object

Usage

```
createGiottoObject(
  raw_exprs,
  spatial_locs = NULL,
  norm_expr = NULL,
  norm_scaled_expr = NULL,
  custom_expr = NULL,
  cell_metadata = NULL,
  gene_metadata = NULL,
  spatial_network = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = NULL,
  spatial_grid = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = NULL,
  spatial_enrichment = NULL,
  spatial_enrichment_name = NULL,
  dimension_reduction = NULL,
  nn_network = NULL,
  offset_file = NULL,
  instructions = NULL
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| raw_exprs | matrix with raw expression counts [required] |
| spatial_locs | data.table or data.frame with coordinates for cell centroids |
| norm_expr | normalized expression values |
| norm_scaled_expr | scaled expression values |
| custom_expr | custom expression values |
| cell_metadata | cell annotation metadata |
| gene_metadata | gene annotation metadata |
| spatial_network | list of spatial network(s) |
| spatial_network_name | list of spatial network name(s) |
| spatial_grid | list of spatial grid(s) |
| spatial_grid_name | list of spatial grid name(s) |
| spatial_enrichment | list of spatial enrichment score(s) for each spatial region |
| spatial_enrichment_name | list of spatial enrichment name(s) |
| dimension_reduction | list of dimension reduction(s) |
| nn_network | list of nearest neighbor network(s) |
| offset_file | file used to stitch fields together (optional) |
| instructions | list of instructions or output result from createGiottoInstructions |

Details

[Requirements] To create a giotto object you need to provide at least a matrix with genes as row names and cells as column names. To include spatial information about cells (or regions) you need to provide a data.table or data.frame with coordinates for all spatial dimensions. This can be 2D (x and y) or 3D (x, y, x). The row order for the cell coordinates should be the same as the column order for the provided expression data.

[Instructions] Additionally an instruction file, generated manually or with [createGiottoInstructions](#) can be provided to instructions, if not a default instruction file will be created for the Giotto object.

[Multiple fields] In case a dataset consists of multiple fields, like seqFISH+ for example, an offset file can be provided to stitch the different fields together. [stitchFieldCoordinates](#) can be used to generate such an offset file.

[Processed data] Processed count data, such as normalized data, can be provided using one of the different expression slots (norm_expr, norm_scaled_expr, custom_expr).

[Metadata] Cell and gene metadata can be provided using the cell and gene metadata slots. This data can also be added afterwards using the [addGeneMetadata](#) or [addCellMetadata](#) functions.

[Other information] Additional information can be provided through the appropriate slots:

- spatial networks
- spatial grids
- spatial enrichments
- dimensions reductions
- nearest neighbours networks

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
createGiottoObject(raw_exprs, spatial_locs)
```

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| createHeatmap_DT | <i>createHeatmap_DT</i> |
|------------------|-------------------------|

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
createHeatmap_DT(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,
  cluster_cor_method = "pearson",
  cluster_hclust_method = "ward.D",
  gene_order = c("custom", "correlation"),
  gene_custom_order = NULL,
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",
  gene_hclust_method = "complete"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| genes | genes to use |
| cluster_column | name of column to use for clusters |
| cluster_order | method to determine cluster order |
| cluster_custom_order | custom order for clusters |
| cluster_cor_method | method for cluster correlation |
| cluster_hclust_method | method for hierarchical clustering of clusters |
| gene_order | method to determine gene order |
| gene_custom_order | custom order for genes |
| gene_cor_method | method for gene correlation |
| gene_hclust_method | method for hierarchical clustering of genes |

Details

Creates input data.tables for plotHeatmap function.

Value

list

Examples

```
createHeatmap_DT(gobject)
```

```
createNearestNetwork    createNearestNetwork
```

Description

create a nearest neighbour network based on previously computed dimension reductions

Usage

```
createNearestNetwork(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  type = c("sNN", "kNN"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  k = 30,
  minimum_shared = 5,
  top_shared = 3,
  verbose = T,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| type | kNN or sNN |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction method to use |
| dim_reduction_name | name of dimension reduction set to use |
| dimensions_to_use | number of dimensions to use as input |

| | |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| genes_to_use | if dim_reduction_to_use = NULL, which genes to use |
| name | arbitrary name for NN network |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| k | number of k neighbors to use |
| minimum_shared | minimum shared neighbors |
| top_shared | keep at ... |
| verbose | be verbose |
| ... | additional parameters |

Details

Description of nearest neighbor network creation and filter steps.

Value

giotto object with updated NN network

Examples

```
createNearestNetwork(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| createSpatialEnrich | <i>createSpatialEnrich</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------------|

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a hypergeometric test.

Usage

```
createSpatialEnrich(
  gobject,
  enrich_method = c("PAGE", "rank", "hypergeometric"),
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore"),
  name = "PAGE",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gobject Giotto object
enrich_method method for gene signature enrichment calculation
sign_matrix Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
expression_values expression values to use
reverse_log_scale reverse expression values from log scale
logbase log base to use if reverse_log_scale = TRUE
output_enrichment how to return enrichment output
name to give to spatial enrichment results, default = PAGE
return_gobject return giotto object

Details

For details see the individual functions:

- PAGE: [PAGEEnrich](#)
- PAGE: [rankEnrich](#)
- PAGE: [hyperGeometricEnrich](#)

Value

Giotto object or enrichment results if return_gobject = FALSE

Examples

```
createSpatialEnrich(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| createSpatialGrid | <i>createSpatialGrid</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Create a spatial grid.

Usage

```

createSpatialGrid(
  gobject,
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimz_stepsize = NULL,
  minimum_padding = 1,
  name = "spatial_grid",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx_stepsize</code> | stepsize along the x-axis |
| <code>sdimy_stepsize</code> | stepsize along the y-axis |
| <code>sdimz_stepsize</code> | stepsize along the z-axis |
| <code>minimum_padding</code> | minimum padding on the edges |
| <code>name</code> | name for spatial grid (default = 'spatial_grid') |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

Details

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

Value

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

Examples

```
createSpatialGrid(gobject)
```

```
createSpatialGrid_2D    createSpatialGrid_2D
```

Description

create a spatial grid for 2D spatial data.

Usage

```
createSpatialGrid_2D(
  gobject,
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,
  minimum_padding = 1,
  name = "spatial_grid",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx_stepsize</code> | stepsize along the x-axis |
| <code>sdimy_stepsize</code> | stepsize along the y-axis |
| <code>minimum_padding</code> | minimum padding on the edges |
| <code>name</code> | name for spatial grid (default = 'spatial_grid') |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

Details

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

Value

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

Examples

```
createSpatialGrid_2D(gobject)
```

```
createSpatialGrid_3D    createSpatialGrid_3D
```

Description

Create a spatial grid for 3D spatial data.

Usage

```
createSpatialGrid_3D(
  gobject,
  sdimx_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimy_stepsize = NULL,
  sdimz_stepsize = NULL,
  minimum_padding = 1,
  name = "spatial_grid",
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx_stepsize</code> | stepsize along the x-axis |
| <code>sdimy_stepsize</code> | stepsize along the y-axis |
| <code>sdimz_stepsize</code> | stepsize along the z-axis |
| <code>minimum_padding</code> | minimum padding on the edges |
| <code>name</code> | name for spatial grid (default = 'spatial_grid') |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

Details

Creates a spatial grid with defined x, y (and z) dimensions. The dimension units are based on the provided spatial location units.

Value

giotto object with updated spatial grid slot

Examples

```
createSpatialGrid_3D(gobject)
```

```
createSpatialNetwork    createSpatialNetwork
```

Description

Create a spatial network based on cell centroid physical distances.

Usage

```
createSpatialNetwork(
  gobject,
  k = 4,
  dimensions = "all",
  maximum_distance = NULL,
  minimum_k = 0,
  name = "spatial_network",
  verbose = F,
  return_gobject = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>k</code> | number of nearest neighbors based on physical distance |
| <code>dimensions</code> | which spatial dimensions to use (default = all) |
| <code>maximum_distance</code> | distance cutoff for nearest neighbors to consider |
| <code>minimum_k</code> | minimum nearest neighbours if <code>maximum_distance</code> != NULL |
| <code>name</code> | name for spatial network (default = 'spatial_network') |
| <code>verbose</code> | verbose |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

Details

Creates a spatial network connecting single-cells based on their physical distance to each other. Number of neighbors can be determined by `k`, maximum distance from each cell with or without setting a minimum `k` for each cell.

dimensions: default = 'all' which takes all possible dimensions. Alternatively you can provide a character vector that specifies the spatial dimensions to use, e.g. `c("sdimx", "sdimy")` or a numerical vector, e.g. `2:3`

maximum_distance: to create a network based on maximum distance only, you also need to set `k` to a very high value, e.g. `k = 100`

Value

giotto object with updated spatial network slot

Examples

```
createSpatialNetwork(gobject)
```

```
create_average_detection_DT
      create_average_detection_DT
```

Description

calculates average gene detection for a cell metadata factor (e.g. cluster)

Usage

```
create_average_detection_DT(
  gobject,
  meta_data_name,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  detection_threshold = 0
)
```

Arguments

```
gobject          giotto object
meta_data_name   name of metadata column to use
expression_values
                  which expression values to use
detection_threshold
                  detection threshold to consider a gene detected
```

Value

data.table with average gene expression values for each factor

```
create_average_DT      create_average_DT
```

Description

calculates average gene expression for a cell metadata factor (e.g. cluster)

Usage

```
create_average_DT(
  gobject,
  meta_data_name,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom")
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object

meta_data_name name of metadata column to use

expression_values which expression values to use

Value

data.table with average gene expression values for each factor

```
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs
      create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs
```

Description

creates randomized cell ids within a selection of cell types

Usage

```
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  needed_cell_types
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object to use

cluster_column cluster column with cell type information

needed_cell_types vector of cell type names for which a random id will be found

Details

Details will follow.

Value

list of randomly sampled cell ids with same cell type composition

Examples

```
create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs(gobject)
```

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| create_cluster_matrix | <i>create_cluster_matrix</i> |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|

Description

creates aggregated matrix for a given clustering

Usage

```
create_cluster_matrix(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  cluster_column,  
  gene_subset = NULL  
)
```

Examples

```
create_cluster_matrix(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| create_dimObject | <i>create_dimObject</i> |
|------------------|-------------------------|

Description

Creates an object that stores a dimension reduction output

Usage

```
create_dimObject(  
  name = "test",  
  reduction_method = NULL,  
  coordinates = NULL,  
  misc = NULL  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| name | arbitrary name for object |
| reduction_method | method used to reduce dimensions |
| coordinates | accepts the coordinates after dimension reduction |
| misc | any additional information will be added to this slot |

Value

number of distinct colors

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| decide_cluster_order | <i>decide_cluster_order</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
decide_cluster_order(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes,  
  cluster_column = NULL,  
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),  
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,  
  cor_method = "pearson",  
  hclust_method = "ward.D"  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| genes | genes to use |
| cluster_column | name of column to use for clusters |
| cluster_order | method to determine cluster order |
| cluster_custom_order | custom order for clusters |
| cor_method | method for correlation |
| hclust_method | method for hierarchical clustering |

Details

Calculates order for clusters.

Value

custom

Examples

```
decide_cluster_order(gobject)
```

 detectSpatialPatterns *detectSpatialPatterns*

Description

Identify spatial patterns through PCA on average expression in a spatial grid.

Usage

```
detectSpatialPatterns(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  min_cells_per_grid = 4,
  scale_unit = F,
  ncp = 100,
  show_plot = T,
  PC_zscore = 1.5
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use (default = 'spatial_grid') |
| <code>min_cells_per_grid</code> | minimum number of cells in a grid to be considered |
| <code>scale_unit</code> | scale features |
| <code>ncp</code> | number of principal components to calculate |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plots |
| <code>PC_zscore</code> | minimum z-score of variance explained by a PC |

Details

Steps to identify spatial patterns:

- 1. average gene expression for cells within a grid, see `createSpatialGrid`
- 2. perform PCA on the average grid expression profiles
- 3. convert variance of principal components (PCs) to z-scores and select PCs based on a z-score threshold

Value

spatial pattern object 'spatPatObj'

Examples

```
detectSpatialPatterns(gobject)
```

dimCellPlot

dimCellPlot

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimCellPlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>cell_annotation_values</code> | numeric cell annotation columns |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | size of not selected cells |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| show_cluster_center | plot center of selected clusters |
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| label_fontface | font of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| title | title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimCellPlot2D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
dimCellPlot(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| dimCellPlot2D | <i>dimCellPlot2D</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```

dimCellPlot2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_annotation_values,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dimCellPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| spat_enr_names | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| cell_annotation_values | numeric cell annotation columns |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| cell_color_gradient | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| gradient_midpoint | midpoint for color gradient |
| gradient_limits | vector with lower and upper limits |
| select_cell_groups | select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter |
| select_cells | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| other_point_size | size of not selected cells |
| show_cluster_center | plot center of selected clusters |
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| label_fontface | font of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| title | title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter |

Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
dimCellPlot2D(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| dimGenePlot | <i>dimGenePlot</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimGenePlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| ... | parameters for cowplot::save_plot() |
| expression_values | gene expression values to use |
| genes | genes to show |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimension reduction name |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| scale_alpha_with_expression | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| midpoint | size of point (cell) |
| cow_n_col | cowplot param: how many columns |
| cow_rel_h | cowplot param: relative height |
| cow_rel_w | cowplot param: relative width |
| cow_align | cowplot param: how to align |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plots |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[dimGenePlot3D](#)

Examples

dimGenePlot(gobject)

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| dimGenePlot2D | <i>dimGenePlot2D</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimGenePlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
```

```

network_color = "lightgray",
edge_alpha = NULL,
scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
point_size = 1,
genes_high_color = "red",
genes_mid_color = "white",
genes_low_color = "blue",
point_border_col = "black",
point_border_stroke = 0.1,
midpoint = 0,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_legend = T,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "dimGenePlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to show |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>edge_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code> | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>midpoint</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>cow_n_col</code> | cowplot param: how many columns |

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cow_rel_h | cowplot param: relative height |
| cow_rel_w | cowplot param: relative width |
| cow_align | cowplot param: how to align |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plots |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |
| ... | parameters for cowplot::save_plot() |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[dimGenePlot3D](#)

Examples

dimGenePlot2D(gobject)

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| dimGenePlot3D | <i>dimGenePlot3D</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimGenePlot3D(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  dim3_to_use = 3,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
```

```

network_color = "lightgray",
cluster_column = NULL,
select_cell_groups = NULL,
select_cells = NULL,
show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
other_point_size = 1,
edge_alpha = NULL,
point_size = 2,
genes_high_color = NULL,
genes_mid_color = "white",
genes_low_color = "blue",
show_legend = T,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "dimGenePlot3D"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to show |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>dim3_to_use</code> | dimension to use on z-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>edge_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plots |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>...</code> | parameters for <code>cowplot::save_plot()</code> |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
dimGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

| | |
|-----------|------------------|
| dimPlot2D | <i>dimPlot2D</i> |
|-----------|------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
dimPlot2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
```

```

    point_border_col = "black",
    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    title = NULL,
    show_legend = T,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "dimPlot2D"
)

dimPlot(gobject, ...)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | size of not selected cells |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| label_fontface | font of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| title | title for plot, defaults to cell_color parameter |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters. For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [dimPlot3D](#)

Value

ggplot
ggplot

Examples

```
dimPlot2D(gobject)
dimPlot2D(gobject)
```

dimPlot3D

dimPlot3D

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```

dimPlot3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 4,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "dim3D"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>dim3_to_use</code> | dimension to use on z-axis |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | size of not selected cells |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| show_cluster_center | plot center of selected clusters |
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |
| show_legend | show legend |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
dimPlot3D(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| direction_test_CPG | <i>direction_test_CPG</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

shows direction of change

Usage

```
direction_test(x, min_fdr = 0.05)
```

Examples

```
direction_test_CPG()
```

| | |
|----------|-----------------|
| doHclust | <i>doHclust</i> |
|----------|-----------------|

Description

cluster cells using hierarchical clustering algorithm

Usage

```
doHclust(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes_to_use = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),  
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",  
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,  
  distance_method = c("pearson", "spearman", "original", "euclidean", "maximum",  
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),  
  agglomeration_method = c("ward.D2", "ward.D", "single", "complete", "average",  
    "mcquitty", "median", "centroid"),  
  k = 10,  
  h = NULL,  
  name = "hclust",  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  set_seed = T,  
  seed_number = 1234  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| genes_to_use | subset of genes to use |

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimensions reduction name |
| dimensions_to_use | dimensions to use |
| distance_method | distance method |
| agglomeration_method | agglomeration method for hclust |
| k | number of final clusters |
| h | cut hierarchical tree at height = h |
| name | name for hierarchical clustering |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| set_seed | set seed |
| seed_number | number for seed |
| ... | additional parameters |

Details

Description on how to use Kmeans clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doHclust(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------|---------------|
| doHMRF | <i>doHMRF</i> |
|--------|---------------|

Description

Run HMRF

Usage

```
doHMRF(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  spatial_genes = NULL,  
  spatial_dimensions = c("sdimx", "sdimy", "sdimz"),  
  dim_reduction_to_use = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",  
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,  
  name = "test",  
  k = 10,  
)
```

```

betas = c(0, 2, 50),
tolerance = 1e-10,
zscore = c("none", "rowcol", "colrow"),
numinit = 100,
python_path = NULL,
output_folder = NULL,
overwrite_output = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use for HMRF |
| <code>spatial_genes</code> | spatial genes to use for HMRF |
| <code>spatial_dimensions</code> | select spatial dimensions to use, default is all possible dimensions |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | use another dimension reduction set as input |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | name of dimension reduction set to use |
| <code>dimensions_to_use</code> | number of dimensions to use as input |
| <code>name</code> | name of HMRF run |
| <code>k</code> | number of HMRF domains |
| <code>betas</code> | betas to test for |
| <code>tolerance</code> | tolerance |
| <code>zscore</code> | zscore |
| <code>numinit</code> | number of initializations |
| <code>python_path</code> | python path to use |
| <code>output_folder</code> | output folder to save results |
| <code>overwrite_output</code> | overwrite output folder |

Details

Description of HMRF parameters ...

Value

Creates a directory with results that can be viewed with `viewHMRResults`

Examples

```
doHMRF(gobject)
```

doKmeans

*doKmeans***Description**

cluster cells using kmeans algorithm

Usage

```
doKmeans(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = c("cells", "pca", "umap", "tsne"),
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  distance_method = c("original", "pearson", "spearman", "euclidean", "maximum",
    "manhattan", "canberra", "binary", "minkowski"),
  centers = 10,
  iter_max = 100,
  nstart = 1000,
  algorithm = "Hartigan-Wong",
  name = "kmeans",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| genes_to_use | subset of genes to use |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimensions reduction name |
| dimensions_to_use | dimensions to use |
| distance_method | distance method |
| centers | number of final clusters |
| iter_max | kmeans maximum iterations |
| nstart | kmeans nstart |
| algorithm | kmeans algorithm |
| name | name for kmeans clustering |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

| | |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| set_seed | set seed |
| seed_number | number for seed |
| ... | additional parameters |

Details

Description on how to use Kmeans clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doKmeans(gobject)
```

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| doLeidenCluster | <i>doLeidenCluster</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------|

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Leiden community detection algorithm

Usage

```
doLeidenCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "leiden_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  python_path = NULL,
  resolution = 1,
  weight_col = "weight",
  partition_type = c("RBConfigurationVertexPartition", "ModularityVertexPartition"),
  init_membership = NULL,
  n_iterations = 1000,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| name | name for cluster |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use |
| python_path | specify specific path to python if required |

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------|
| resolution | resolution |
| weight_col | weight column |
| partition_type | partition type to use |
| init_membership | initial membership of cells |
| n_iterations | number of iterations |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| set_seed | set seed |
| seed_number | number for seed |
| ... | additional parameters |

Details

Description of Leiden clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLeidenCluster(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| doLeidenSubCluster | <i>doLeidenSubCluster</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Leiden algorithm

Usage

```
doLeidenSubCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_pleiden_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  resolution = 0.5,
  n_iterations = 500,
  python_path = NULL,
```

```

nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
return_gobject = TRUE,
verbose = T,
...
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>name</code> | name for new clustering result |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column to subcluster |
| <code>selected_clusters</code> | only do subclustering on these clusters |
| <code>hvg_param</code> | parameters for calculateHVG |
| <code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code> | threshold for detection in min percentage of cells |
| <code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code> | threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection |
| <code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code> | forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA |
| <code>min_nr_of_hvg</code> | minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA |
| <code>pca_param</code> | parameters for runPCA |
| <code>nn_param</code> | parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork |
| <code>k_neighbors</code> | number of k for createNearestNetwork |
| <code>resolution</code> | resolution of Leiden clustering |
| <code>n_iterations</code> | number of iterations |
| <code>python_path</code> | specify specific path to python if required |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>verbose</code> | verbose |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters |

Details

Description of Leiden clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLeidenSubCluster(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| doLouvainCluster | <i>doLouvainCluster</i> |
|------------------|-------------------------|

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm.

Usage

```
doLouvainCluster(
  gobject,
  version = c("community", "multinet"),
  name = "louvain_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  python_path = NULL,
  resolution = 1,
  weight_col = NULL,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  louv_random = F,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| version | implemented version of Louvain clustering to use |
| name | name for cluster |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use |
| python_path | specify specific path to python if required |
| resolution | resolution |
| gamma | gamma |
| omega | omega |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| set_seed | set seed |
| seed_number | number for seed |
| ... | additional parameters |

Details

Louvain clustering using the community or multinet implementation of the louvain clustering algorithm.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainCluster(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainCluster_community
```

```
doLouvainCluster_community
```

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm from the community module in Python

Usage

```
doLouvainCluster_community(  
    gobject,  
    name = "louvain_clus",  
    nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
    network_name = "sNN.pca",  
    python_path = NULL,  
    resolution = 1,  
    weight_col = NULL,  
    louv_random = F,  
    return_gobject = TRUE,  
    set_seed = F,  
    seed_number = 1234,  
    ...  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| name | name for cluster |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use |
| python_path | specify specific path to python if required |
| resolution | resolution |
| weight_col | weight column |
| louv_random | random |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| set_seed | set seed |
| seed_number | number for seed |
| ... | additional parameters |

Details

Description of Leiden clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainCluster_community(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet
```

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet
```

Description

cluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm from the multinet package in R.

Usage

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet(  
  gobject,  
  name = "louvain_clus",  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  weight_col = NULL,  
  gamma = 1,  
  omega = 1,  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  set_seed = F,  
  seed_number = 1234,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>name</code> | name for cluster |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use |
| <code>gamma</code> | gamma |
| <code>omega</code> | omega |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>set_seed</code> | set seed |
| <code>seed_number</code> | number for seed |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters |
| <code>python_path</code> | specify specific path to python if required |

Details

See louvain algorithm from the multinet package in R.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainCluster_multinet(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| doLouvainSubCluster | <i>doLouvainSubCluster</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------------|

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain algorithm

Usage

```
doLouvainSubCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_clus",
  version = c("community", "multinet"),
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  resolution = 0.5,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = T,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| name | name for new clustering result |
| version | version of Louvain algorithm to use |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column to subcluster |
| <code>selected_clusters</code> | only do subclustering on these clusters |
| <code>hvg_param</code> | parameters for calculateHVG |
| <code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code> | threshold for detection in min percentage of cells |
| <code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code> | threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection |
| <code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code> | forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA |
| <code>min_nr_of_hvg</code> | minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA |
| <code>pca_param</code> | parameters for runPCA |
| <code>nn_param</code> | parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork |
| <code>k_neighbors</code> | number of k for createNearestNetwork |
| <code>resolution</code> | resolution for community algorithm |
| <code>gamma</code> | gamma |
| <code>omega</code> | omega |
| <code>python_path</code> | specify specific path to python if required |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>verbose</code> | verbose |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters |

Details

Description of Louvain clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community
    doLouvainSubCluster_community
```

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain community detection algorithm

Usage

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_comm_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  resolution = 0.5,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = T,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>name</code> | name for new clustering result |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column to subcluster |
| <code>selected_clusters</code> | only do subclustering on these clusters |
| <code>hvg_param</code> | parameters for calculateHVG |
| <code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code> | threshold for detection in min percentage of cells |
| <code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code> | threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection |
| <code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code> | forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA |
| <code>min_nr_of_hvg</code> | minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA |
| <code>pca_param</code> | parameters for runPCA |

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| nn_param | parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork |
| k_neighbors | number of k for createNearestNetwork |
| resolution | resolution |
| python_path | specify specific path to python if required |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| verbose | verbose |
| ... | additional parameters |

Details

Description of Leiden clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster_community(gobject)
```

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet
      doLouvainSubCluster_multinet
```

Description

subcluster cells using a NN-network and the Louvain multinet detection algorithm

Usage

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_louvain_mult_clus",
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
```

```

nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
return_gobject = TRUE,
verbose = T,
...
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>name</code> | name for new clustering result |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column to subcluster |
| <code>selected_clusters</code> | only do subclustering on these clusters |
| <code>hvg_param</code> | parameters for calculateHVG |
| <code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code> | threshold for detection in min percentage of cells |
| <code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code> | threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection |
| <code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code> | forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA |
| <code>min_nr_of_hvg</code> | minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA |
| <code>pca_param</code> | parameters for runPCA |
| <code>nn_param</code> | parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork |
| <code>k_neighbors</code> | number of k for createNearestNetwork |
| <code>gamma</code> | gamma |
| <code>omega</code> | omega |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>verbose</code> | verbose |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters |
| <code>python_path</code> | specify specific path to python if required |

Details

Description of Louvain clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doLouvainSubCluster_multinet(gobject)
```

doRandomWalkCluster *doRandomWalkCluster*

Description

Cluster cells using a random walk approach.

Usage

```
doRandomWalkCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "random_walk_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  walk_steps = 4,
  walk_clusters = 10,
  walk_weights = NA,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>name</code> | name for cluster |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use |
| <code>walk_steps</code> | number of walking steps |
| <code>walk_clusters</code> | number of final clusters |
| <code>walk_weights</code> | cluster column defining the walk weights |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>set_seed</code> | set seed |
| <code>seed_number</code> | number for seed |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters |

Details

See random walk algorithm from the igraph package in R.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doRandomWalkCluster(gobject)
```

doSNNCluster

*doSNNCluster***Description**

Cluster cells using a SNN cluster approach.

Usage

```
doSNNCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "sNN_clus",
  nn_network_to_use = "kNN",
  network_name = "kNN.pca",
  k = 20,
  eps = 4,
  minPts = 16,
  borderPoints = TRUE,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  set_seed = F,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>name</code> | name for cluster |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (only works on kNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of kNN network to use |
| <code>k</code> | Neighborhood size for nearest neighbor sparsification to create the shared NN graph. |
| <code>eps</code> | Two objects are only reachable from each other if they share at least <code>eps</code> nearest neighbors. |
| <code>minPts</code> | minimum number of points that share at least <code>eps</code> nearest neighbors for a point to be considered a core points. |
| <code>borderPoints</code> | should borderPoints be assigned to clusters like in DBSCAN? |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>set_seed</code> | set seed |
| <code>seed_number</code> | number for seed |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters |

Details

See `sNNclust` algorithm from `dbscan` package

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
doSNNCluster(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------|---------------------|
| dt_to_matrix | <i>dt_to_matrix</i> |
|--------------|---------------------|

Description

converts data.table to matrix

Usage

```
dt_to_matrix(x)
```

Examples

```
dt_to_matrix(x)
```

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| exportGiottoViewer | <i>exportGiottoViewer</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

compute highly variable genes

Usage

```
exportGiottoViewer(
  gobject,
  output_directory = NULL,
  annotations,
  dim_reductions,
  dim_reduction_names,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  dim_red_rounding = NULL,
  dim_red_rescale = c(-20, 20),
  expression_rounding = NULL,
  overwrite_dir = F,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>output_directory</code> | directory where to save the files |
| <code>annotations</code> | giotto cell annotations to view |
| <code>dim_reductions</code> | high level dimension reductions to view |
| <code>dim_reduction_names</code> | specific dimension reduction names |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use in Viewer |
| <code>dim_red_rounding</code> | numerical indicating how to round the coordinates |
| <code>dim_red_rescale</code> | numericals to rescale the coordinates |
| <code>expression_rounding</code> | numerical indicating how to round the expression data |
| <code>overwrite_dir</code> | overwrite files in the directory if it already existed |
| <code>verbose</code> | be verbose |

Details

Giotto Viewer expects the results from Giotto Analyzer in a specific format, which is provided by this function.

Value

writes the necessary output to use in Giotto Viewer

Examples

```
exportGiottoViewer(gobject)
```

```
exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores
```

```
exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores
```

Description

Cell-Cell communication scores based on expression only

Usage

```
exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores(
  gobject,
  cluster_column = "cell_types",
  random_iter = 100,
  gene_set_1,
  gene_set_2,
  log2FC_addendum = 0.1,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object to use |
| cluster_column | cluster column with cell type information |
| random_iter | number of iterations |
| gene_set_1 | first specific gene set from gene pairs |
| gene_set_2 | second specific gene set from gene pairs |
| log2FC_addendum | addendum to add when calculating log2FC |
| verbose | verbose |

Details

Details will follow.

Value

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on expression only

Examples

```
exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| extended_gini_fun | <i>extended_gini_fun</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

calculate gini coefficient on a minimum length vector

Usage

```
extended_gini_fun(x, weights = rep(1, length = length(x)), minimum_length = 16)
```

Value

gini coefficient

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| extractNearestNetwork | <i>extractNearestNetwork</i> |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|

Description

Extracts a NN-network from a Giotto object as an igraph object

Usage

```
extractNearestNetwork(
  gobject,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| nn_network_to_use | kNN or sNN |
| network_name | name of NN network to be used |

Value

igraph object

Examples

```
extractNearestNetwork(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------|----------------|
| fDataDT | <i>fDataDT</i> |
|---------|----------------|

Description

show gene metadata

Usage

```
fDataDT(gobject)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------|---------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
|---------|---------------|

Value

data.table with gene metadata

Examples

```
pDataDT(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| filterCombinations | <i>filterCombinations</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

Shows how many genes and cells are lost with combinations of thresholds.

Usage

```
filterCombinations(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  expression_thresholds = c(1, 2),
  gene_det_in_min_cells = c(5, 50),
  min_det_genes_per_cell = c(200, 400),
  scale_x_axis = "identity",
  x_axis_offset = 0,
  scale_y_axis = "identity",
  y_axis_offset = 0,
  show_plot = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| expression_thresholds | all thresholds to consider a gene expressed |
| gene_det_in_min_cells | minimum number of cells that should express a gene to consider that gene further |
| min_det_genes_per_cell | minimum number of expressed genes per cell to consider that cell further |
| scale_x_axis | ggplot transformation for x-axis (e.g. log2) |
| x_axis_offset | x-axis offset to be used together with the scaling transformation |
| scale_y_axis | ggplot transformation for y-axis (e.g. log2) |
| y_axis_offset | y-axis offset to be used together with the scaling transformation |
| show_plot | show plot |

Details

Creates a scatterplot that visualizes the number of genes and cells that are lost with a specific combination of a gene and cell threshold given an arbitrary cutoff to call a gene expressed. This function can be used to make an informed decision at the filtering step with filterGiotto.

Value

list of data.table and ggplot object

Examples

```
filterCombinations(gobject)
```

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| filterCPGscores | <i>filterCPGscores</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------|

Description

visualize Cell Proximity Gene enrichment scores

Usage

```
filterCPGscores(
  CPGscore,
  min_cells = 5,
  min_fdr = 0.05,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,
  keep_int_duplicates = TRUE,
  direction = c("both", "up", "down")
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| min_cells | min number of cells threshold |
| min_fdr | false_discovery threshold |
| min_spat_diff | spatial difference threshold |
| min_log2_fc | min log2 fold-change |
| keep_int_duplicates | keep both cell_A-cell_B and cell_B-cell_A |
| direction | expression changes to keep |
| method | visualization method |

Details

This function filters the output from `getCellProximityGeneScores` based on false-discovery rate, minimum absolute difference, minimum log fold-change and direction of change.

Value

Gene to gene scores in data.table format

Examples

```
filterCPGscores(CPGscore)
```

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| filterDistributions | <i>filterDistributions</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------------|

Description

show gene or cell distribution after filtering on expression threshold

Usage

```
filterDistributions(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  expression_threshold = 1,  
  detection = c("genes", "cells"),  
  plot_type = c("histogram", "violin"),  
  nr_bins = 30,  
  fill_color = "lightblue",  
  scale_axis = "identity",  
  axis_offset = 0,  
  show_plot = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>expression_threshold</code> | threshold to consider a gene expressed |
| <code>detection</code> | consider genes or cells |
| <code>plot_type</code> | type of plot |
| <code>nr_bins</code> | number of bins for histogram plot |
| <code>fill_color</code> | fill color for plots |
| <code>scale_axis</code> | ggplot transformation for axis (e.g. log2) |
| <code>axis_offset</code> | offset to be used together with the scaling transformation |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |

Value

ggplot object

Examples

```
filterDistributions(gobject)
```

filterGiotto

filterGiotto

Description

filter Giotto object based on expression threshold

Usage

```
filterGiotto(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("raw", "normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  expression_threshold = 1,
  gene_det_in_min_cells = 100,
  min_det_genes_per_cell = 100,
  verbose = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>expression_threshold</code> | threshold to consider a gene expressed |
| <code>gene_det_in_min_cells</code> | minimum # of cells that need to express a gene |
| <code>min_det_genes_per_cell</code> | minimum # of genes that need to be detected in a cell |
| <code>verbose</code> | verbose |

Details

The function [filterCombinations](#) can be used to explore the effect of different parameter values.

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
filterGiotto(gobject)
```

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| findGiniMarkers | <i>findGiniMarkers</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------|

Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters based on gini detection and expression scores.

Usage

```
findGiniMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | gene expression values to use |
| cluster_column | clusters to use |
| subset_clusters | selection of clusters to compare |
| group_1 | group 1 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison |
| group_2 | group 2 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison |
| min_expr_gini_score | filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression |
| min_det_gini_score | filter minimum gini coefficient for detection |
| detection_threshold | detection threshold for gene expression |
| rank_score | rank scores to include |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findGiniMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all
      findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters based on gini detection and expression scores.

Usage

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  min_genes = 10,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | clusters to use |
| <code>subset_clusters</code> | selection of clusters to compare |
| <code>min_expr_gini_score</code> | filter on minimum gini coefficient on expression |
| <code>min_det_gini_score</code> | filter on minimum gini coefficient on detection |
| <code>detection_threshold</code> | detection threshold for gene expression |
| <code>min_genes</code> | minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC |
| <code>verbose</code> | be verbose |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

findMarkers

*findMarkers***Description**

Identify marker genes for selected clusters.

Usage

```
findMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  method = c("scrn", "gini", "mast"),
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  group_1_name = NULL,
  group_2_name = NULL,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | gene expression values to use |
| cluster_column | clusters to use |
| method | method to use to detect differentially expressed genes |
| subset_clusters | selection of clusters to compare |
| group_1 | group 1 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison |
| group_2 | group 2 cluster IDs from cluster_column for pairwise comparison |
| min_expr_gini_score | gini: filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression |
| min_det_gini_score | gini: filter minimum gini coefficient for detection |
| detection_threshold | gini: detection threshold for gene expression |
| rank_score | gini: rank scores to include |
| group_1_name | mast: custom name for group_1 clusters |
| group_2_name | mast: custom name for group_2 clusters |
| adjust_columns | mast: column in pDataDT to adjust for (e.g. detection rate) |
| ... | additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scrn or zlm function in MAST |

Details

Wrapper for findScranMarkers, findGiniMarkers and FindMastMarkers.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all
```

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters.

Usage

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  method = c("scrn", "gini", "mast"),
  pval = 0.01,
  logFC = 0.5,
  min_genes = 10,
  min_expr_gini_score = 0.5,
  min_det_gini_score = 0.5,
  detection_threshold = 0,
  rank_score = 1,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | gene expression values to use |
| cluster_column | clusters to use |
| subset_clusters | selection of clusters to compare |
| method | method to use to detect differentially expressed genes |
| pval | scrn & mast: filter on minimal p-value |

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| logFC | scan & mast: filter on logFC |
| min_genes | minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC |
| min_expr_gini_score | gini: filter on minimum gini coefficient for expression |
| min_det_gini_score | gini: filter minimum gini coefficient for detection |
| detection_threshold | gini: detection threshold for gene expression |
| rank_score | gini: rank scores to include |
| adjust_columns | mast: column in pDataDT to adjust for (e.g. detection rate) |
| verbose | be verbose |
| ... | additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scan or zlm function in MAST |

Details

Wrapper for findScranMarkers_one_vs_all, findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all and FindMastMarkers_one_vs_all.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| findMastMarkers | <i>findMastMarkers</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------|

Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters based on the MAST package.

Usage

```
findMastMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_1_name = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  group_2_name = NULL,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | clusters to use |
| <code>group_1</code> | group 1 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison |
| <code>group_1_name</code> | custom name for <code>group_1</code> clusters |
| <code>group_2</code> | group 2 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison |
| <code>group_2_name</code> | custom name for <code>group_2</code> clusters |
| <code>adjust_columns</code> | column in <code>pDataDT</code> to adjust for (e.g. detection rate) |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters for the <code>zlm</code> function in <code>MAST</code> |

Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the `MAST` functions to detect differentially expressed genes.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findMastMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all
```

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters based on the `MAST` package.

Usage

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  adjust_columns = NULL,
  pval = 0.001,
  logFC = 1,
  min_genes = 10,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```


Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | clusters to use |
| <code>subset_clusters</code> | selection of clusters to compare |
| <code>adjust_columns</code> | column in <code>pDataDT</code> to adjust for (e.g. detection rate) |
| <code>pval</code> | filter on minimal p-value |
| <code>logFC</code> | filter on logFC |
| <code>min_genes</code> | minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides <code>pval</code> and <code>logFC</code> |
| <code>verbose</code> | be verbose |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters for the <code>zlm</code> function in <code>MAST</code> |

Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the `MAST` functions to detect differentially expressed genes.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findMastMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <code>findScranMarkers</code> | <i>findScranMarkers</i> |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|

Description

Identify marker genes for selected clusters based on `scran`'s implementation of `findMarkers`.

Usage

```
findScranMarkers(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  group_1 = NULL,
  group_2 = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | clusters to use |
| <code>subset_clusters</code> | selection of clusters to compare |
| <code>group_1</code> | group 1 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison |
| <code>group_2</code> | group 2 cluster IDs from <code>cluster_column</code> for pairwise comparison |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters for the <code>findMarkers</code> function in <code>scrn</code> |

Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the `findMarkers` function from the `scrn` package.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findScranMarkers(gobject)
```

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all
      findScranMarkers_one_vs_all
```

Description

Identify marker genes for all clusters in a one vs all manner based on `scrn`'s implementation of `findMarkers`.

Usage

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  subset_clusters = NULL,
  pval = 0.01,
  logFC = 0.5,
  min_genes = 10,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | clusters to use |
| <code>subset_clusters</code> | subset of clusters to use |
| <code>pval</code> | filter on minimal p-value |
| <code>logFC</code> | filter on logFC |
| <code>min_genes</code> | minimum genes to keep per cluster, overrides pval and logFC |
| <code>verbose</code> | be verbose |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters for the findMarkers function in scrn |

Details

This is a minimal convenience wrapper around the findMarkers function from the scrn package.

Value

data.table with marker genes

Examples

```
findScranMarkers_one_vs_all(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| <code>find_grid_2D</code> | <i>find_grid_2D</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|

Description

find grid location in 2D

Usage

```
find_grid_2D(grid_DT, x_loc, y_loc)
```

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| <code>find_grid_3D</code> | <i>find_grid_3D</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|

Description

find grid location in 3D

Usage

```
find_grid_3D(grid_DT, x_loc, y_loc, z_loc)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| find_grid_x | <i>find_grid_x</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

find grid location on x-axis

Usage

```
find_grid_x(grid_DT, x_loc)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| find_grid_y | <i>find_grid_y</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

find grid location on y-axis

Usage

```
find_grid_y(grid_DT, y_loc)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| find_grid_z | <i>find_grid_z</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

find grid location on z-axis

Usage

```
find_grid_z(grid_DT, z_loc)
```

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| fish_function | <i>fish_function</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

Description

perform fisher exact test

Usage

```
fish_function(x_to, x_from)
```

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| fish_function2 | <i>fish_function2</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------|

Description

perform fisher exact test

Usage

```
fish_function2(A, B, C, D)
```

| | |
|----------|-----------------|
| FSV_show | <i>FSV_show</i> |
|----------|-----------------|

Description

Visualize spatial variable genes caculated by spatial_DE

Usage

```
FSV_show(  
  results,  
  ms_results = NULL,  
  size = c(4, 2, 1),  
  color = c("blue", "green", "red"),  
  sig_alpha = 0.5,  
  unsig_alpha = 0.5  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| results | results caculated by spatial_DE |
| ms_results | ms_results caculated by spatial_DE |
| size | indicate different levels of qval |
| color | indicate different SV features |
| sig_alpha | transparency of significant genes |
| unsig_alpha | transparency of insignificant genes |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

nothing

Examples

```
FSV_show(results)
```

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| GenePattern_show | <i>GenePattern_show</i> |
|------------------|-------------------------|

Description

Visualize genes distribution patterns calculated by spatial_AEH

Usage

```
GenePattern_show(
  gobject = NULL,
  AEH_results = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  point_alpha = 1,
  low_color = "blue",
  mid_color = "white",
  high_color = "red",
  midpoint = 0
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>AEH_results</code> | results from spatial_AEH |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x axis of spatial locus |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y axis of spatial locus |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of points to indicate cells |
| <code>point_alpha</code> | transparency of points to indicate cells |
| <code>low_color</code> | color to indicate low score level |
| <code>mid_color</code> | color to indicate middle score level |
| <code>high_color</code> | color to indicate high score level |
| <code>midpoint</code> | point to set mid_color |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

nothing

Examples

```
GenePattern_show(gobject,AEH_results)
```

general_save_function *general_save_function*

Description

Function to automatically save plots to directory of interest

Usage

```
general_save_function(
  gobject,
  plot_object,
  save_dir = NULL,
  save_folder = NULL,
  save_name = NULL,
  default_save_name = "giotto_plot",
  save_format = c("png", "tiff", "pdf", "svg"),
  show_saved_plot = F,
  base_width = NULL,
  base_height = NULL,
  base_aspect_ratio = NULL,
  units = NULL,
  dpi = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>plot_object</code> | non-ggplot object to plot |
| <code>save_dir</code> | directory to save to |
| <code>save_folder</code> | folder in <code>save_dir</code> to save to |
| <code>save_name</code> | name of plot |
| <code>save_format</code> | format (e.g. png, tiff, pdf, ...) |
| <code>show_saved_plot</code> | load & display the saved plot |
| <code>base_width</code> | width |
| <code>base_height</code> | height |
| <code>base_aspect_ratio</code> | aspect ratio |
| <code>units</code> | units |
| <code>dpi</code> | Plot resolution |

Examples

```
general_save_function(gobject)
```

```
getCellProximityGeneScores
      getCellProximityGeneScores
```

Description

Compute cell-cell interaction enrichment (observed vs expected)

Usage

```
getCellProximityGeneScores(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  cluster_column = "louvain_clus.1",
  selected_genes = NULL,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  do_diff_test = TRUE,
  diff_test = c("t.test", "wilcox"),
  minimum_unique_cells = NA,
  fold_change_addendum = 0.1,
  in_two_directions = TRUE,
  exclude_selected_cells_from_test = F,
  verbose = T
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | name of column to use for clusters |
| <code>selected_genes</code> | selection of genes to perform calculations for |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>do_diff_test</code> | perform differential test |
| <code>diff_test</code> | which differential expression test |
| <code>minimum_unique_cells</code> | minimum number of cells needed to proceed |
| <code>fold_change_addendum</code> | constant to add when calculating log2 fold-change |
| <code>in_two_directions</code> | shows enrichment in both directions: cell1-cell2, cell2-cell1 |
| <code>exclude_selected_cells_from_test</code> | exclude certain cells from test |
| <code>verbose</code> | verbose |

Details

Function to calculate if genes are differentially expressed in cell types when they interact (according to physical proximity) with other cell types. The results data.table contains the following columns:

- genes: All or selected list of tested genes
- cell_expr_1: average gene expression in cell type 1 from unified_int cell-cell interaction
- cell_expr_2: average gene expression in cell type 2 from unified_int cell-cell interaction
- comb_expr: combined average gene expression in cell type 1 and 2 from unified_int cell-cell interaction
- all_cell_expr_1: average gene expression for all cells from cell type 1
- all_cell_expr_2: average gene expression for all cells from cell type 2
- all_comb_expr: combined average gene expression for all cells from cell type 1 and 2
- pval_1: p-value from test between interacting cells and all cells from cell type 1
- pval_2: p-value from test between interacting cells and all cells from cell type 2
- cell_type_1: first cell type of cell-cell interaction
- cell_type_2: second cell type of cell-cell interaction
- interaction: the cell-cell interaction, based on physical proximity
- nr_1: number of cell type 1 in the unified cell-cell interaction
- nr_2: number of cell type 2 in the unified cell-cell interaction
- all_nr_1: number of all cell type 1 in the whole dataset
- all_nr_2: number of all cell type 2 in the whole dataset
- diff_spat: difference between comb_expr and all_comb_expr
- diff_spat_1: difference between cell_expr_1 and all_cell_expr_1
- diff_spat_2: difference between cell_expr_2 and all_cell_expr_2
- log2fc_spat_1: fold-change of diff_spat_1
- log2fc_spat_2: fold-change of diff_spat_2
- log2fc_spat: fold-change of diff_spat
- type_int: type of interaction
- unified_int: interaction with alphabetically sorted cell type 1 and cell type 2
- unif_int_rank: 1 or 2
- fdr_1: fdr from test between interacting cells and all cells from cell type 1
- fdr_2: fdr from test between interacting cells and all cells from cell type 2

Value

Cell Proximity Gene scores (CPGscores) in data.table format

Examples

```
getCellProximityGeneScores(gobject)
```

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| getClusterSimilarity | <i>getClusterSimilarity</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|

Description

Creates data.table with pairwise correlation scores between each cluster.

Usage

```
getClusterSimilarity(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman")
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| cluster_column | name of column to use for clusters |
| cor | correlation score to calculate distance |

Details

Creates data.table with pairwise correlation scores between each cluster and the group size (# of cells) for each cluster. This information can be used together with mergeClusters to combine very similar or small clusters into bigger clusters.

Value

data.table

Examples

```
getClusterSimilarity(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| getDendrogramSplits | <i>getDendrogramSplits</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------------|

Description

Split dendrogram at each node and keep the leave (label) information..

Usage

```
getDendrogramSplits(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  distance = "ward.D",
  h = NULL,
  h_color = "red",
  show_dend = TRUE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| cluster_column | name of column to use for clusters |
| cor | correlation score to calculate distance |
| distance | distance method to use for hierarchical clustering |
| h | height of horizontal lines to plot |
| h_color | color of horizontal lines |
| show_dend | show dendrogram |
| verbose | be verbose |

Details

Creates a data.table with three columns and each row represents a node in the dendrogram. For each node the height of the node is given together with the two subdendrograms. This information can be used to determine in a hierarchical manner differentially expressed marker genes at each node.

Value

data.table object

Examples

```
getDendrogramSplits(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| getDistinctColors | <i>getDistinctColors</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Returns a number of distinct colors based on the RGB scale

Usage

```
getDistinctColors(n)
```

Arguments

n number of colors wanted

Value

number of distinct colors

getGeneToGeneScores *getGeneToGeneScores*

Description

Compute gene-gene enrichment scores.

Usage

```
getGeneToGeneScores(
  CPGscore,
  selected_genes = NULL,
  specific_genes_1 = NULL,
  specific_genes_2 = NULL,
  min_cells = 5,
  min_fdr = 0.05,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,
  direction = c("both", "up", "down"),
  fold_change_addendum = 0.1,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

CPGscore CPGscore, output from getCellProximityGeneScores()

selected_genes select subset of genes

specific_genes_1 specific source genes (see details)

specific_genes_2 specific target genes (see details)

min_cells min number of cells threshold

min_spat_diff spatial difference threshold

min_log2_fc log2 fold-change threshold

direction up or downregulation or both

fold_change_addendum constant to add when calculating log2 fold-change

verbose verbose

min_pval p-value threshold

Details

Give more details ...

Value

Gene to gene scores in data.table format

Examples

```
getGeneToGeneScores(CPGscore)
```

```
get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion
      get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion
```

Description

creates unified cell-cell interaction names

Usage

```
get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion(all_cell_types)
```

Examples

```
get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion()
```

```
get_interaction_gene_enrichment
      get_interaction_gene_enrichment
```

Description

Computes gene enrichment between all interactions

Usage

```
get_interaction_gene_enrichment(
  spatial_network,
  unified_int_col = "unified_int",
  source_col = "source_clus",
  source_IDs = "from",
  neighb_col = "neighb_clus",
  neighb_IDs = "to",
  expression_matrix,
  cell_annotation,
  annotation_ID = "uniq_ID",
  cell_type_col,
  do_diff_test = T,
  diff_test = c("t.test", "wilcox"),
```

```

    minimum_unique_cells = NA,
    exclude_selected_cells_from_test = T,
    verbose = T
  )

```

Examples

```
get_interaction_gene_enrichment()
```

```

get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment
  get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment

```

Description

Computes gene enrichment between specified interaction

Usage

```

get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment(
  sub_spatial_network,
  source_col = "source_clus",
  source_IDs = "from",
  neighb_col = "neighb_clus",
  neighb_IDs = "to",
  expression_matrix,
  interaction_name = "to_specify",
  cell_annotation,
  annotation_ID = "uniq_ID",
  cell_type_col,
  do_diff_test = T,
  diff_test = c("t.test", "wilcox"),
  minimum_unique_cells = NA,
  exclude_selected_cells_from_test = T
)

```

Examples

```
get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment()
```

```
ggplot_save_function  ggplot_save_function
```

Description

Function to automatically save plots to directory of interest

Usage

```
ggplot_save_function(
  gobject,
  plot_object,
  save_dir = NULL,
  save_folder = NULL,
  save_name = NULL,
  default_save_name = "giotto_plot",
  save_format = NULL,
  show_saved_plot = F,
  ncol = 1,
  nrow = 1,
  scale = 1,
  base_width = NULL,
  base_height = NULL,
  base_aspect_ratio = NULL,
  units = NULL,
  dpi = NULL,
  limitsize = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>plot_object</code> | ggplot object to plot |
| <code>save_dir</code> | directory to save to |
| <code>save_folder</code> | folder in <code>save_dir</code> to save to |
| <code>save_name</code> | name of plot |
| <code>save_format</code> | format (e.g. png, tiff, pdf, ...) |
| <code>show_saved_plot</code> | load & display the saved plot |
| <code>ncol</code> | number of columns |
| <code>nrow</code> | number of rows |
| <code>scale</code> | scale |
| <code>base_width</code> | width |
| <code>base_height</code> | height |
| <code>base_aspect_ratio</code> | aspect ratio |
| <code>units</code> | units |
| <code>dpi</code> | Plot resolution |
| <code>limitsize</code> | When TRUE (the default), ggsave will not save images larger than 50x50 inches, to prevent the common error of specifying dimensions in pixels. |

See Also

[cowplot::save_plot](#)

Examples

```
ggplot_save_function(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------|------------------------|
| giotto-class | <i>S4 giotto Class</i> |
|--------------|------------------------|

Description

Framework of giotto object to store and work with spatial expression data

Slots

raw_exprs raw expression counts
 norm_expr normalized expression counts
 norm_scaled_expr normalized and scaled expression counts
 custom_expr custom normalized counts
 spatial_locs spatial location coordinates for cells
 cell_metadata metadata for cells
 gene_metadata metadata for genes
 cell_ID unique cell IDs
 gene_ID unique gene IDs
 spatial_network spatial network in data.table/data.frame format
 spatial_grid spatial grid in data.table/data.frame format
 dimension_reduction slot to save dimension reduction coordinates
 nn_network nearest neighbor network in igraph format
 parameters slot to save parameters that have been used
 instructions slot for global function instructions
 offset_file offset file used to stitch together image fields
 OS_platform Operating System to run Giotto analysis on

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| hyperGeometricEnrich | <i>hyperGeometricEnrich</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a hypergeometric test.

Usage

```
hyperGeometricEnrich(
  gobject,
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore")
)
```


Arguments

- gobject Giotto object
- sign_matrix Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process
- expression_values expression values to use
- reverse_log_scale reverse expression values from log scale
- logbase log base to use if reverse_log_scale = TRUE
- output_enrichment how to return enrichment output

Details

The enrichment score is calculated based on the p-value from the hypergeometric test, -log10(p-value).

Value

data.table with enrichment results

Examples

```
hyperGeometricEnrich(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| iterCluster | <i>iterCluster</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

cluster cells iteratively

Usage

```
iterCluster(  
  gobject,  
  cluster_method = c("leiden", "louvain_community", "louvain_multinet"),  
  nr_rounds = 5,  
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values  
    = "normalized"),  
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,  
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,  
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,  
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,  
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),  
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),  
  k_neighbors = 20,  
  resolution = 1,  
  gamma = 1,  
  omega = 1,  
  python_path = NULL,
```

```

nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
name = "iter_clus",
return_gobject = TRUE,
...
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>cluster_method</code> | clustering algorithm to use |
| <code>nr_rounds</code> | number of iterative rounds |
| <code>hvg_param</code> | parameters for calculateHVG |
| <code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code> | threshold for detection in min percentage of cells |
| <code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code> | threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection |
| <code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code> | forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA |
| <code>min_nr_of_hvg</code> | minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA |
| <code>pca_param</code> | parameters for runPCA |
| <code>nn_param</code> | parameters for parameters for runPCA |
| <code>k_neighbors</code> | k for nn-network |
| <code>resolution</code> | resolution |
| <code>gamma</code> | gamma |
| <code>omega</code> | omega |
| <code>python_path</code> | python path to use for Leiden clustering |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | NN network to use |
| <code>network_name</code> | NN network name |
| <code>name</code> | name of clustering |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters |

Details

Description of iterative clustering.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
iterCluster(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| iterLeidenCluster | <i>iterLeidenCluster</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

cluster cells iteratively

Usage

```
iterLeidenCluster(
  gobject,
  name = "iter_clus",
  nr_rounds = 5,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 20,
  resolution = 1,
  n_iterations = 1000,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>name</code> | name of clustering |
| <code>nr_rounds</code> | number of iterative rounds |
| <code>hvg_param</code> | parameters for calculateHVG |
| <code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code> | threshold for detection in min percentage of cells |
| <code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code> | threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection |
| <code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code> | forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA |
| <code>min_nr_of_hvg</code> | minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA |
| <code>pca_param</code> | parameters for runPCA |
| <code>nn_param</code> | parameters for parameters for runPCA |
| <code>k_neighbors</code> | k for nn-network |
| <code>resolution</code> | resolution for Leiden clustering |

n_iterations number of iterations for Leiden clustering
python_path python path to use for Leiden clustering
nn_network_to_use
 NN network to use
network_name NN network name
return_gobject boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE)
... additional parameters

Details

Description of iterative clustering.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

iterLeidenCluster(gobject)

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| iterLouvainCluster | <i>iterLouvainCluster</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

cluster cells iteratively

Usage

```
iterLouvainCluster(  
  gobject,  
  version = c("community", "multinet"),  
  nr_rounds = 5,  
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values  
    = "normalized"),  
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,  
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,  
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,  
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,  
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),  
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),  
  k_neighbors = 20,  
  resolution = 1,  
  gamma = 1,  
  omega = 1,  
  python_path = NULL,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  name = "iter_clus",  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>version</code> | louvain clustering algorithm to use |
| <code>nr_rounds</code> | number of iterative rounds |
| <code>hvg_param</code> | parameters for calculateHVG |
| <code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code> | threshold for detection in min percentage of cells |
| <code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code> | threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection |
| <code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code> | forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA |
| <code>min_nr_of_hvg</code> | minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA |
| <code>pca_param</code> | parameters for runPCA |
| <code>nn_param</code> | parameters for parameters for runPCA |
| <code>k_neighbors</code> | k for nn-network |
| <code>resolution</code> | resolution |
| <code>gamma</code> | gamma |
| <code>omega</code> | omega |
| <code>python_path</code> | python path to use for Leiden clustering |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | NN network to use |
| <code>network_name</code> | NN network name |
| <code>name</code> | name of clustering |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters |

Details

Description of iterative clustering.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
iterLouvainCluster(gobject)
```

```
iterLouvainCluster_community
      iterLouvainCluster_community
```

Description

cluster cells iteratively

Usage

```
iterLouvainCluster_community(
  gobject,
  nr_rounds = 5,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 20,
  resolution = 1,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  name = "iter_clus",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>nr_rounds</code> | number of iterative rounds |
| <code>hvg_param</code> | parameters for calculateHVG |
| <code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code> | threshold for detection in min percentage of cells |
| <code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code> | threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection |
| <code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code> | forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA |
| <code>min_nr_of_hvg</code> | minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA |
| <code>pca_param</code> | parameters for runPCA |
| <code>nn_param</code> | parameters for parameters for runPCA |
| <code>k_neighbors</code> | k for nn-network |
| <code>resolution</code> | resolution for Leiden clustering |
| <code>python_path</code> | python path to use for Leiden clustering |

| | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| nn_network_to_use | NN network to use |
| network_name | NN network name |
| name | name of clustering |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| ... | additional parameters |

Details

Description of iterative clustering.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
iterLouvainCluster_community(gobject)
```

```
iterLouvainCluster_multinet
      iterLouvainCluster_multinet
```

Description

cluster cells iteratively

Usage

```
iterLouvainCluster_multinet(
  gobject,
  nr_rounds = 5,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 20,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  name = "iter_clus",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>nr_rounds</code> | number of iterative rounds |
| <code>hvg_param</code> | parameters for calculateHVG |
| <code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code> | threshold for detection in min percentage of cells |
| <code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code> | threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection |
| <code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code> | forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA |
| <code>min_nr_of_hvg</code> | minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA |
| <code>pca_param</code> | parameters for runPCA |
| <code>nn_param</code> | parameters for parameters for runPCA |
| <code>k_neighbors</code> | k for nn-network |
| <code>gamma</code> | gamma |
| <code>omega</code> | omega |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | NN network to use |
| <code>network_name</code> | NN network name |
| <code>name</code> | name of clustering |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters |
| <code>python_path</code> | python path to use for Leiden clustering |

Details

Description of iterative clustering.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
iterLouvainCluster_multinet(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| <code>kmeans_binarize</code> | <i>kmeans_binarize</i> |
|------------------------------|------------------------|

Description

create binarized scores using kmeans

Usage

```
kmeans_binarize(x, nstart = 3, iter.max = 10)
```

| | |
|----------|-----------------|
| loadHMRF | <i>loadHMRF</i> |
|----------|-----------------|

Description

load previous HMRF

Usage

```
loadHMRF(  
  name_used = "test",  
  output_folder_used,  
  k_used = 10,  
  betas_used,  
  python_path_used  
)
```

Arguments

- name_used name of HMRF that was run
- output_folder_used output folder that was used
- k_used number of HMRF domains that was tested
- betas_used betas that were tested
- python_path_used python path that was used

Details

Description of HMRF parameters ...

Value

reloads a previous ran HMRF from doHRMF

Examples

```
loadHMRF(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| make_simulated_network | <i>make_simulated_network</i> |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|

Description

Simulate random network.

Usage

```
make_simulated_network(
  gobject,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  cluster_column,
  number_of_simulations = 100
)
```

Examples

```
make_simulated_network(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| mergeClusters | <i>mergeClusters</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

Description

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

Usage

```
mergeClusters(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  new_cluster_name = "merged_cluster",
  min_cor_score = 0.8,
  max_group_size = 20,
  force_min_group_size = 10,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| cluster_column | name of column to use for clusters |
| cor | correlation score to calculate distance |
| new_cluster_name | new name for merged clusters |
| min_cor_score | min correlation score to merge pairwise clusters |
| max_group_size | max cluster size that can be merged |
| force_min_group_size | size of clusters that will be merged with their most similar neighbor(s) |
| return_gobject | return giotto object |
| verbose | be verbose |

Details

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster. To avoid large clusters to merge the `max_group_size` can be lowered. Small clusters can be forcibly merged with their most similar pairwise cluster by adjusting the `force_min_group_size` parameter. Clusters smaller than this value will be merged independent on the provided `min_cor_score` value.

A giotto object is returned by default, if FALSE then the merging vector will be returned.

Value

Giotto object

Examples

```
mergeClusters(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------|-------------------|
| mygini_fun | <i>mygini_fun</i> |
|------------|-------------------|

Description

calculate gini coefficient

Usage

```
mygini_fun(x, weights = rep(1, length(x)))
```

Value

gini coefficient

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| nnDT_to_kNN | <i>nnDT_to_kNN</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

Convert a nearest network data.table to a kNN object

Usage

```
nnDT_to_kNN(nnDT)
```

Arguments

nnDT nearest neighbor network in data.table format

Value

kNN object

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| node_clusters | <i>node_clusters</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

Description

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

Usage

```
node_clusters(hclus_obj, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------|--------------|
| hclus_obj | hclus object |
| verbose | be verbose |

Value

list of splitted dendrogram nodes from high to low node height

Examples

```
node_clusters(hclus_obj)
```

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| normalizeGiotto | <i>normalizeGiotto</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------|

Description

normalize and/or scale expresion values of Giotto object

Usage

```
normalizeGiotto(
  gobject,
  norm_methods = c("standard", "osmFISH"),
  library_size_norm = TRUE,
  scalefactor = 6000,
  log_norm = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  scale_genes = T,
  scale_cells = T,
  scale_order = c("first_genes", "first_cells"),
  verbose = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>norm_methods</code> | normalization method to use |
| <code>library_size_norm</code> | normalize cells by library size |
| <code>scalefactor</code> | scale factor to use after library size normalization |
| <code>log_norm</code> | transform values to log-scale |
| <code>logbase</code> | log base to use to log normalize expression values |
| <code>scale_genes</code> | z-score genes over all cells |
| <code>scale_cells</code> | z-score cells over all genes |
| <code>scale_order</code> | order to scale genes and cells |
| <code>verbose</code> | be verbose |

Details

Currently there are two 'methods' to normalize your raw counts data.

A. The standard method follows the standard protocol which can be adjusted using the provided parameters and follows the following order:

- 1. Data normalization for total library size and scaling by a custom scale-factor.
- 2. Log transformation of data.
- 3. Z-scoring of data by genes and/or cells.

B. The normalization method as provided by the osmFISH paper is also implemented:

- 1. First normalize genes, for each gene divide the counts by the total gene count and multiply by the total number of genes.
- 2. Next normalize cells, for each cell divide the normalized gene counts by the total counts per cell and multiply by the total number of cells.

This data will be saved in the Giotto slot for custom expression.

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
normalizeGiotto(gobject)
```

OR_function2

OR_function2

Description

calculate odds-ratio

Usage

```
OR_function2(A, B, C, D)
```

PAGEEnrich

PAGEEnrich

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using PAGE.

Usage

```
PAGEEnrich(
  gobject,
  sign_matrix,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,
  logbase = 2,
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore")
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | Giotto object |
| <code>sign_matrix</code> | Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>reverse_log_scale</code> | reverse expression values from log scale |
| <code>logbase</code> | log base to use if <code>reverse_log_scale = TRUE</code> |
| <code>output_enrichment</code> | how to return enrichment output |

Details

The enrichment Z score is calculated by using method (PAGE) from Kim SY et al., BMC bioinformatics, 2005 as $Z = ((Sm - \mu) * m^{1/2}) / \delta$. For each gene in each spot, μ is the fold change values versus the mean expression and δ is the standard deviation. Sm is the mean fold change value of a specific marker gene set and m is the size of a given marker gene set.

Value

data.table with enrichment results

Examples

```
PAGEEnrich(gobject)
```

pDataDT

pDataDT

Description

show cell metadata

Usage

```
pDataDT(gobject)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object

Value

data.table with cell metadata

Examples

```
pDataDT(gobject)
```

plotCPGscores

plotCPGscores

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
plotCPGscores(  
  CPGscores,  
  selected_interactions = NULL,  
  selected_genes = NULL,  
  detail_plot = T,  
  simple_plot = F,  
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),  
  facet_scales = "fixed",  
  facet_ncol = length(selected_genes),  
  facet_nrow = length(selected_interactions),  
  show_plot = F  
)
```

Arguments

CPGscores CPGscores, output from getCellProximityGeneScores()
selected_interactions interactions to show
selected_genes genes to show
detail_plot show detailed info in both interacting cell types
simple_plot show a simplified plot
simple_plot_facet facet on interactions or genes with simple plot
facet_scales ggplot facet scales paramter
facet_ncol ggplot facet ncol parameter
facet_nrow ggplot facet nrow parameter
show_plot show plot

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

plotCPGscores(CPGscores)

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| plotGTGscores | <i>plotGTGscores</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
plotGTGscores(  
  gobject,  
  GTGscore,  
  selected_interactions = NULL,  
  selected_gene_to_gene = NULL,  
  detail_plot = T,  
  simple_plot = F,  
  simple_plot_facet = c("interaction", "genes"),  
  facet_scales = "fixed",  
  facet_ncol = length(selected_gene_to_gene),  
  facet_nrow = length(selected_interactions),  
  colors = c("blue", "red"),  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,
```



```

    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "plotGTGscores"
  )

```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>GTGscore</code> | GTGscore, output from <code>getGeneToGeneScores()</code> |
| <code>selected_interactions</code> | interactions to show |
| <code>detail_plot</code> | show detailed info in both interacting cell types |
| <code>simple_plot</code> | show a simplified plot |
| <code>simple_plot_facet</code> | facet on interactions or genes with simple plot |
| <code>facet_scales</code> | ggplot facet scales paramter |
| <code>facet_ncol</code> | ggplot facet ncol parameter |
| <code>facet_nrow</code> | ggplot facet nrow parameter |
| <code>colors</code> | vector with 2 colors to represent respectively all and selected cells |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plots |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>selected_genes</code> | genes to show |

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

```
plotGTGscores(GTGscore)
```

plotHeatmap

plotHeatmap

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
plotHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  cluster_order = c("size", "correlation", "custom"),
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,
  cluster_color_code = NULL,
  cluster_cor_method = "pearson",
  cluster_hclust_method = "ward.D",
  gene_order = c("custom", "correlation"),
  gene_custom_order = NULL,
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",
  gene_hclust_method = "complete",
  show_values = c("rescaled", "z-scaled", "original"),
  size_vertical_lines = 1.1,
  gradient_colors = c("blue", "yellow", "red"),
  gene_label_selection = NULL,
  axis_text_y_size = NULL,
  legend_nrows = 1,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotHeatmap"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | name of column to use for clusters |
| <code>cluster_order</code> | method to determine cluster order |
| <code>cluster_custom_order</code> | custom order for clusters |
| <code>cluster_color_code</code> | color code for clusters |
| <code>cluster_cor_method</code> | method for cluster correlation |

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cluster_hclust_method | method for hierarchical clustering of clusters |
| gene_order | method to determine gene order |
| gene_custom_order | custom order for genes |
| gene_cor_method | method for gene correlation |
| gene_hclust_method | method for hierarchical clustering of genes |
| show_values | which values to show on heatmap |
| size_vertical_lines | sizes for vertical lines |
| gradient_colors | colors for heatmap gradient |
| gene_label_selection | subset of genes to show on y-axis |
| axis_text_y_size | size for y-axis text |
| legend_nrows | number of rows for the cluster legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Creates heatmap for genes and clusters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotHeatmap(gobject)
```

plotly_axis_scale_2D *plotly_axis_scale_2D*

Description

adjust the axis scale in 3D plotly plot

Usage

```
plotly_axis_scale_2D(
  cell_locations,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  mode = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| cell_locations | spatial_loc in giotto object |
| sdimx | x axis of cell spatial location |
| sdimy | y axis of cell spatial location |
| mode | axis adjustment mode |
| custom_ratio | set the ratio artificially |

Value

edges in spatial grid as data.table()

Examples

```
plotly_axis_scale_2D(gobject)
```

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| plotly_axis_scale_3D | <i>plotly_axis_scale_3D</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|

Description

adjust the axis scale in 3D plotly plot

Usage

```
plotly_axis_scale_3D(
  cell_locations,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  mode = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| cell_locations | spatial_loc in giotto object |
| sdimx | x axis of cell spatial location |
| sdimy | y axis of cell spatial location |
| sdimz | z axis of cell spatial location |
| mode | axis adjustment mode |
| custom_ratio | set the ratio artificially |

Value

edges in spatial grid as data.table()

Examples

```
plotly_axis_scale_3D(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| plotly_grid | <i>plotly_grid</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

provide grid segment to draw in plot_ly()

Usage

```
plotly_grid(
  spatial_grid,
  x_start = "x_start",
  y_start = "y_start",
  x_end = "x_end",
  y_end = "y_end"
)
```

Arguments

spatial_grid spatial_grid in giotto object

Value

edges in spatial grid as data.table()

Examples

```
plotly_grid(gobject)
```

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| plotly_network | <i>plotly_network</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------|

Description

provide network segment to draw in 3D plot_ly()

Usage

```

plotly_network(
  network,
  x = "sdimx_begin",
  y = "sdimy_begin",
  z = "sdimz_begin",
  x_end = "sdimx_end",
  y_end = "sdimy_end",
  z_end = "sdimz_end"
)

```

Arguments

`gobject` network in giotto object

Value

edges in network as `data.table()`

Examples

```
plotly_network(gobject)
```

`plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap`

plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```

plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap(
  gobject,
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  value_cols = NULL,
  first_meta_col = NULL,
  second_meta_col = NULL,
  show_values = c("zscores", "original", "zscores_rescaled"),
  custom_cluster_order = NULL,
  clus_cor_method = "pearson",
  clus_cluster_method = "complete",
  custom_values_order = NULL,
  values_cor_method = "pearson",
  values_cluster_method = "complete",
  midpoint = 0,
  x_text_size = 8,
  x_text_angle = 45,
  y_text_size = 8,

```

```

    strip_text_size = 8,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>metadata_cols</code> | annotation columns found in <code>pDataDT(gobject)</code> |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>value_cols</code> | value columns to use |
| <code>first_meta_col</code> | if more than 1 metadata column, select the x-axis factor |
| <code>second_meta_col</code> | if more than 1 metadata column, select the facetting factor |
| <code>show_values</code> | which values to show on heatmap |
| <code>custom_cluster_order</code> | custom cluster order (default = NULL) |
| <code>clus_cor_method</code> | correlation method for clusters |
| <code>clus_cluster_method</code> | hierarchical cluster method for the clusters |
| <code>midpoint</code> | midpoint of <code>show_values</code> |
| <code>x_text_size</code> | size of x-axis text |
| <code>x_text_angle</code> | angle of x-axis text |
| <code>y_text_size</code> | size of y-axis text |
| <code>strip_text_size</code> | size of strip text |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>custom_gene_order</code> | custom gene order (default = NULL) |
| <code>gene_cor_method</code> | correlation method for genes |
| <code>gene_cluster_method</code> | hierarchical cluster method for the genes |

Details

Creates heatmap for the average values of selected value columns in the different annotation groups

Value

ggplot or data.table

Examples

```
plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| plotMetaDataHeatmap | <i>plotMetaDataHeatmap</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------------|

Description

creates order for clusters

Usage

```
plotMetaDataHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  metadata_cols = NULL,
  selected_genes = NULL,
  first_meta_col = NULL,
  second_meta_col = NULL,
  show_values = c("zscores", "original", "zscores_rescaled"),
  custom_cluster_order = NULL,
  clus_cor_method = "pearson",
  clus_cluster_method = "complete",
  custom_gene_order = NULL,
  gene_cor_method = "pearson",
  gene_cluster_method = "complete",
  midpoint = 0,
  x_text_size = 10,
  x_text_angle = 45,
  y_text_size = 10,
  strip_text_size = 8,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "plotMetaDataHeatmap"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| metadata_cols | annotation columns found in pDataDT(gobject) |
| selected_genes | subset of genes to use |
| first_meta_col | if more than 1 metadata column, select the x-axis factor |

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| second_meta_col | if more than 1 metadata column, select the facetting factor |
| show_values | which values to show on heatmap |
| custom_cluster_order | custom cluster order (default = NULL) |
| clus_cor_method | correlation method for clusters |
| clus_cluster_method | hierarchical cluster method for the clusters |
| custom_gene_order | custom gene order (default = NULL) |
| gene_cor_method | correlation method for genes |
| gene_cluster_method | hierarchical cluster method for the genes |
| midpoint | midpoint of show_values |
| x_text_size | size of x-axis text |
| x_text_angle | angle of x-axis text |
| y_text_size | size of y-axis text |
| strip_text_size | size of strip text |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Creates heatmap for average the average expression of selected genes in the different annotation groups

Value

ggplot or data.table

Examples

```
plotMetaDataHeatmap(gobject)
```

plotPCA

*plotPCA***Description**

Short wrapper for PCA visualization

Usage

```
plotPCA(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "pca", default_save_name = "PCA", ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| dim_reduction_name | dimension reduction name |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| spat_enr_names | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| cell_color_gradient | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| gradient_midpoint | midpoint for color gradient |
| gradient_limits | vector with lower and upper limits |
| select_cell_groups | select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter |
| select_cells | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| other_point_size | size of not selected cells |
| show_cluster_center | plot center of selected clusters |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| label_fontface | font of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotPCA_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotPCA(gobject)
```

plotPCA_2D

plotPCA_2D

Description

Short wrapper for PCA visualization

Usage

```
plotPCA_2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  default_save_name = "PCA_2D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network</code> = TRUE |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | size of not selected cells |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |
| <code>show_center_label</code> | plot label of selected clusters |
| <code>center_point_size</code> | size of center points |
| <code>label_size</code> | size of labels |
| <code>label_fontface</code> | font of labels |
| <code>edge_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotPCA_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotPCA_2D(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------|-------------------|
| plotPCA_3D | <i>plotPCA_3D</i> |
|------------|-------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to 3D PCA dimension reduction

Usage

```
plotPCA_3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  default_save_name = "PCA_3D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| dim_reduction_name | pca dimension reduction name |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, ideally change save_name in save_param |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| dim3_to_use | dimension to use on z-axis |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| select_cell_groups | select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter |
| select_cells | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| other_point_size | size of not selected cells |
| show_cluster_center | plot center of selected clusters |
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
plotPCA_3D(gobject)
```

plotTSNE

plotTSNE

Description

Short wrapper for tSNE visualization

Usage

```
plotTSNE(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "tsne", default_save_name = "tSNE", ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network</code> = TRUE |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | size of not selected cells |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| label_fontface | font of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotTSNE_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

plotTSNE(gobject)

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| plotTSNE_2D | <i>plotTSNE_2D</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

Short wrapper for tSNE visualization

Usage

```
plotTSNE_2D(  
  gobject,  
  dim_reduction_name = "tsne",  
  default_save_name = "tSNE_2D",  
  ...  
)
```


Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network</code> = TRUE |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | size of not selected cells |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |
| <code>show_center_label</code> | plot label of selected clusters |
| <code>center_point_size</code> | size of center points |
| <code>label_size</code> | size of labels |
| <code>label_fontface</code> | font of labels |
| <code>edge_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotTSNE_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

plotTSNE_2D(gobject)

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| plotTSNE_3D | <i>plotTSNE_3D</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
plotTSNE_3D(  
  gobject,  
  dim_reduction_name = "tsne",  
  default_save_name = "TSNE_3D",  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| dim_reduction_name | tsne dimension reduction name |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| dim3_to_use | dimension to use on z-axis |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| select_cell_groups | select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter |
| select_cells | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| other_point_size | size of not selected cells |
| show_cluster_center | plot center of selected clusters |
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
plotTSNE_3D(gobject)
```

plotUMAP

plotUMAP

Description

Short wrapper for UMAP visualization

Usage

```
plotUMAP(gobject, dim_reduction_name = "umap", default_save_name = "UMAP", ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network</code> = TRUE |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | size of not selected cells |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| label_fontface | font of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotUMAP_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotUMAP(gobject)
```

plotUMAP_2D

plotUMAP_2D

Description

Short wrapper for UMAP visualization

Usage

```
plotUMAP_2D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  default_save_name = "UMAP_2D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network</code> = TRUE |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | size of not selected cells |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |
| <code>show_center_label</code> | plot label of selected clusters |
| <code>center_point_size</code> | size of center points |
| <code>label_size</code> | size of labels |
| <code>label_fontface</code> | font of labels |
| <code>edge_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |

Details

Description of parameters, see [dimPlot2D](#). For 3D plots see [plotUMAP_3D](#)

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plotUMAP_2D(gobject)
```

plotUMAP_3D

plotUMAP_3D

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
plotUMAP_3D(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  default_save_name = "UMAP_3D",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| dim_reduction_name | umap dimension reduction name |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| dim3_to_use | dimension to use on z-axis |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| select_cell_groups | select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter |
| select_cells | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| other_point_size | size of not selected cells |
| show_cluster_center | plot center of selected clusters |
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
plotUMAP_3D(gobject)
```

```
plot_network_layer_ggplot  
    plot_network_layer_ggplot
```

Description

Visualize cells in network layer according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
plot_network_layer_ggplot(  
  gobject,  
  annotated_network_DT,  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  show_legend = T  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| annotated_network_DT | annotated network data.table of selected cells |
| edge_alpha | alpha of network edges |
| show_legend | show legend |
| gobject | giotto object |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plot_network_layer_ggplot(gobject)
```

```
plot_point_layer_ggplot  
    plot_point_layer_ggplot
```

Description

Visualize cells in point layer according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
plot_point_layer_ggplot(
  ggobject,
  annotated_DT_selected,
  annotated_DT_other,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = 0,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_legend = T
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| annotated_DT_selected | annotated data.table of selected cells |
| annotated_DT_other | annotated data.table of not selected cells |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| cell_color_gradient | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| gradient_midpoint | midpoint for color gradient |
| gradient_limits | vector with lower and upper limits |
| select_cell_groups | select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter |
| select_cells | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_cluster_center | plot center of selected clusters |
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| label_fontface | font of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| other_point_size | size of not selected cells |
| show_legend | show legend |
| gobject | giotto object |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plot_point_layer_ggplot(gobject)
```

```
plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot
  plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot
```

Description

creat ggplot point layer for spatial coordinates

Usage

```

plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot(
  ggobject,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  cell_locations_metadata_selected,
  cell_locations_metadata_other,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  point_size = 2,
  point_border_col = "lightgrey",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  show_legend = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>cell_locations_metadata_selected</code> | annotated location from selected cells |
| <code>cell_locations_metadata_other</code> | annotated location from non-selected cells |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |

```

select_cell_groups      select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells           select subset of cells based on cell IDs
point_size             size of point (cell)
point_border_col       color of border around points
point_border_stroke    stroke size of border around points
show_cluster_center    plot center of selected clusters
show_center_label      plot label of selected clusters
center_point_size      size of center points
label_size            size of labels
label_fontface        font of labels
show_other_cells       display not selected cells
other_cell_color       color for not selected cells
other_point_size       point size for not selected cells
show_legend           show legend
gobject              giotto object

```

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| print.giotto | <i>print method for giotto class</i> |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|

Description

print method for giotto class. Prints the chosen number of genes (rows) and cells (columns) from the raw count matrix. Also print the spatial locations for the chosen number of cells.

Usage

```
print.giotto(object, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|------------------------------------|
| nr_genes | number of genes (rows) to print |
| nr_cells | number of cells (columns) to print |

| | |
|------------|-------------------|
| rankEnrich | <i>rankEnrich</i> |
|------------|-------------------|

Description

Function to calculate gene signature enrichment scores per spatial position using a rank based approach.

Usage

```
rankEnrich(  
  gobject,  
  sign_matrix,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  reverse_log_scale = TRUE,  
  logbase = 2,  
  output_enrichment = c("original", "zscore")  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | Giotto object |
| sign_matrix | Matrix of signature genes for each cell type / process |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| reverse_log_scale | reverse expression values from log scale |
| logbase | log base to use if reverse_log_scale = TRUE |
| output_enrichment | how to return enrichment output |

Details

First a new rank is calculated as $R = (R1 * R2)^{(1/2)}$, where R1 is the rank of fold-change for each gene in each spot and R2 is the rank of each marker in each cell type. The Rank-Biased Precision is then calculated as: $RBP = (1 - 0.99) * (0.99)^{(R - 1)}$ and the final enrichment score is then calculated as the sum of top 100 RBPs.

Value

data.table with enrichment results

Examples

```
rankEnrich(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| rank_binarize | <i>rank_binarize</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

Description

create binarized scores using arbitrary rank of top genes

Usage

```
rank_binarize(x, max_rank = 200)
```

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| readGiottoInstructions | <i>readGiottoInstructions</i> |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|

Description

Retrieves the instruction associated with the provided parameter

Usage

```
readGiottoInstructions(giotto_instructions, param = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| giotto_instructions | giotto object or result from createGiottoInstructions() |
| param | parameter to retrieve |

Value

specific parameter

Examples

```
readGiottoInstructions()
```

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| removeCellAnnotation | <i>removeCellAnnotation</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|

Description

removes cell annotation of giotto object

Usage

```
removeCellAnnotation(gobject, columns = NULL, return_gobject = TRUE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| columns | names of columns to remove |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

Details

if return_gobject = FALSE, it will return the cell metadata

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
removeCellAnnotation(gobject)
```

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| removeGeneAnnotation | <i>removeGeneAnnotation</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|

Description

removes gene annotation of giotto object

Usage

```
removeGeneAnnotation(gobject, columns = NULL, return_gobject = TRUE)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| columns | names of columns to remove |
| return_gobject | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |

Details

if return_gobject = FALSE, it will return the gene metadata

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
removeGeneAnnotation(gobject)
```

```
replaceGiottoInstructions
```

```
replaceGiottoInstructions
```

Description

Function to replace all instructions from giotto object

Usage

```
replaceGiottoInstructions(gobject, instructions = NULL)
```

Arguments

`gobject` giotto object

`instructions` new instructions (e.g. result from createGiottoInstructions)

Value

named vector with giotto instructions

Examples

```
replaceGiottoInstructions()
```

```
runPCA
```

```
runPCA
```

Description

run PCA

Usage

```
runPCA(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  name = "pca",
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  scale_unit = F,
  ncp = 200,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>reduction</code> | cells or genes |
| <code>name</code> | arbitrary name for PCA run |
| <code>genes_to_use</code> | subset of genes to use for PCA |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>scale_unit</code> | scale features before PCA |
| <code>ncp</code> | number of principal components to calculate |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters for PCA |

Details

Description of PCA steps...

Value

giotto object with updated PCA dimension reduction

Examples

```
runPCA(gobject)
```

| | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| <code>runtSNE</code> | <i>runtSNE</i> |
|----------------------|----------------|

Description

run tSNE

Usage

```
runtSNE(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",  
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",  
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,  
  name = "tsne",  
  genes_to_use = NULL,  
  return_gobject = TRUE,  
  dims = 2,  
  perplexity = 30,  
  theta = 0.5,  
  do_PCA_first = F,  
  set_seed = T,  
  seed_number = 1234,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>reduction</code> | cells or genes |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | use another dimension reduction set as input |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | name of dimension reduction set to use |
| <code>dimensions_to_use</code> | number of dimensions to use as input |
| <code>name</code> | arbitrary name for tSNE run |
| <code>genes_to_use</code> | if <code>dim_reduction_to_use = NULL</code> , which genes to use |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>dims</code> | tSNE param: number of dimensions to return |
| <code>perplexity</code> | tSNE param: perplexity |
| <code>theta</code> | tSNE param: theta |
| <code>do_PCA_first</code> | tSNE param: do PCA before tSNE (default = FALSE) |
| <code>set_seed</code> | use of seed |
| <code>seed_number</code> | seed number to use |
| <code>...</code> | additional tSNE parameters |

Details

Description of tSNE steps and params ...

Value

giotto object with updated tSNE dimension reduction

Examples

```
runtSNE(gobject)
```

runUMAP

runUMAP

Description

run UMAP

Usage

```
runUMAP(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "pca",
  dim_reduction_name = "pca",
  dimensions_to_use = 1:10,
  name = "umap",
  genes_to_use = NULL,
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  n_neighbors = 40,
  n_components = 2,
  n_epochs = 400,
  min_dist = 0.01,
  n_threads = 1,
  spread = 5,
  set_seed = T,
  seed_number = 1234,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>reduction</code> | cells or genes |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | use another dimension reduction set as input |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | name of dimension reduction set to use |
| <code>dimensions_to_use</code> | number of dimensions to use as input |
| <code>name</code> | arbitrary name for UMAP run |
| <code>genes_to_use</code> | if <code>dim_reduction_to_use = NULL</code> , which genes to use |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>n_neighbors</code> | UMAP param: number of neighbors |
| <code>n_components</code> | UMAP param: number of components |
| <code>n_epochs</code> | UMAP param: number of epochs |
| <code>min_dist</code> | UMAP param: minimum distance |
| <code>n_threads</code> | UMAP param: threads to use |
| <code>spread</code> | UMAP param: spread |
| <code>set_seed</code> | use of seed |
| <code>seed_number</code> | seed number to use |
| <code>...</code> | additional UMAP parameters |

Details

Description of UMAP steps...

Value

giotto object with updated UMAP dimension reduction

Examples

```
runUMAP(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| selectPatternGenes | <i>selectPatternGenes</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

Select genes correlated with spatial patterns

Usage

```
selectPatternGenes(
  spatPatObj,
  dimensions = 1:5,
  top_pos_genes = 10,
  top_neg_genes = 10,
  min_pos_cor = 0.5,
  min_neg_cor = -0.5,
  return_top_selection = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| spatPatObj | Output from detectSpatialPatterns |
| dimensions | dimensions to identify correlated genes for. |
| top_pos_genes | Top positively correlated genes. |
| top_neg_genes | Top negatively correlated genes. |
| min_pos_cor | Minimum positive correlation score to include a gene. |
| min_neg_cor | Minimum negative correlation score to include a gene. |

Details

Description.

Value

Data.table with genes associated with selected dimension (PC).

Examples

```
selectPatternGenes(gobject)
```

```
select_expression_values
      select_expression_values
```

Description

helper function to select expression values

Usage

```
select_expression_values(gobject, values)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>values</code> | expression values to extract |

Value

expression matrix

```
show,giotto-method      show method for giotto class
```

Description

show method for giotto class

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'giotto'
show(object)
```

```
showClusterDendrogram  showClusterDendrogram
```

Description

Creates dendrogram based on identified clusters

Usage

```
showClusterDendrogram(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  distance = "ward.D",
  h = NULL,
  h_color = "red",
  rotate = FALSE,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showClusterDendrogram",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | name of column to use for clusters |
| <code>cor</code> | correlation score to calculate distance |
| <code>distance</code> | distance method to use for hierarchical clustering |
| <code>h</code> | height of horizontal lines to plot |
| <code>h_color</code> | color of horizontal lines |
| <code>rotate</code> | rotate dendrogram 90 degrees |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters for <code>ggdendrogram()</code> |

Details

Correlation dendrogram of selected clustering.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showClusterDendrogram(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| showClusterHeatmap | <i>showClusterHeatmap</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

Creates heatmap based on identified clusters

Usage

```
showClusterHeatmap(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = "all",
  cluster_column,
  cor = c("pearson", "spearman"),
  distance = "ward.D",
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showClusterHeatmap",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | expression values to use |
| <code>genes</code> | vector of genes to use, default to 'all' |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | name of column to use for clusters |
| <code>cor</code> | correlation score to calculate distance |
| <code>distance</code> | distance method to use for hierarchical clustering |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters for the Heatmap function from <code>ComplexHeatmap</code> |

Details

Correlation heatmap of selected clusters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showClusterHeatmap(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| showCPGscores | <i>showCPGscores</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

Description

visualize Cell Proximity Gene enrichment scores

Usage

```
showCPGscores(
  gobject,
  CPGscore,
  method = c("volcano", "cell_barplot", "cell-cell", "cell_sankey"),
  min_cells = 5,
  min_fdr = 0.05,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,
  keep_int_duplicates = TRUE,
  direction = c("both", "up", "down"),
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showCPGscores"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CPGscore | CPGscore, output from getCellProximityGeneScores() |
| method | visualization method |
| min_cells | min number of cells threshold |
| min_fdr | fdr threshold |
| min_spat_diff | spatial difference threshold |
| min_log2_fc | min log2 fold-change |
| keep_int_duplicates | keep both cell_A-cell_B and cell_B-cell_A |
| direction | up or downregulation or both |
| cell_color_code | color code for cell types |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Give more details ...

Value

Gene to gene scores in data.table format

Examples

```
showCPGscores(CPGscore)
```

```
showGeneExpressionProximityScore
```

```
showGeneExpressionProximityScore
```

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
showGeneExpressionProximityScore(  
  scores,  
  selected_gene,  
  sort_column = "diff_spat"  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| scores | CPscore, output from getAverageCellProximityGeneScores() |
| selected_gene | gene to show |
| sort_column | column name to use for sorting |

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

```
showGeneExpressionProximityScore(scores)
```

```
showGiottoInstructions
      showGiottoInstructions
```

Description

Function to display all instructions from giotto object

Usage

```
showGiottoInstructions(gobject)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object

Value

named vector with giotto instructions

Examples

```
showGiottoInstructions()
```

```
showGTGscores                  showGTGscores
```

Description

visualize Cell Proximity Gene enrichment scores

Usage

```
showGTGscores(
  GTGscore,
  method = c("cell_barplot", "cell-cell", "cell_sankey"),
  min_cells = 5,
  min_pval = 0.05,
  min_spat_diff = 0.2,
  min_log2_fc = 0.5,
  direction = c("both", "up", "down"),
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_plot = T,
  specific_genes_1 = NULL,
  specific_genes_2 = NULL,
  first_cell_name = "ligand cell",
  second_cell_name = "receptor cell",
  return_DT = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| method | visualization method |
| min_cells | min number of cells threshold |
| min_pval | p-value threshold |
| min_spat_diff | spatial difference threshold |
| min_log2_fc | log2 fold-change threshold |
| direction | up or downregulation or both |
| cell_color_code | color code for cell types |
| show_plot | print plot |
| specific_genes_1 | subset of genes, matched with specific_genes_2 |
| specific_genes_2 | subset of genes, matched with specific_genes_1 |
| first_cell_name | name for first cells |
| second_cell_name | name for second cells |
| CPGscore | CPGscore, output from getCellProximityGeneScores() |

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showGTGscores(CPGscore)
```

```
showIntExpressionProximityScore
```

```
showIntExpressionProximityScore
```

Description

Create heatmap from cell-cell proximity scores

Usage

```
showIntExpressionProximityScore(
  scores,
  selected_interaction,
  sort_column = "diff_spat",
  show_enriched_n = 5,
  show_depleted_n = 5
)
```

Arguments

- scores scores, output from getAverageCellProximityGeneScores()
- selected_interaction interaction to show
- sort_column column name to use for sorting
- show_enriched_n show top enriched interactions
- show_depleted_n show top depleted interactions

Details

Give more details ...

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

```
showIntExpressionProximityScore(scores)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| showPattern | <i>showPattern</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

- create a spatial grid
- show patterns for 2D spatial data

Usage

```
showPattern(gobject, spatPatObj, ...)  
  
showPattern(gobject, spatPatObj, ...)
```

Arguments

- gobject giotto object
- spatPatObj Output from detectSpatialPatterns
- dimension dimension to plot
- trim Trim ends of the PC values.
- background_color background color for plot
- grid_border_color color for grid
- show_legend show legend of ggplot
- show_plot show plot

return_plot return ggplot object
save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name
 default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Description.

Value

ggplot
ggplot

See Also

[showPattern2D](#)

Examples

```
showPattern(gobject)  
showPattern(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------|----------------------|
| showPattern2D | <i>showPattern2D</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|

Description

show patterns for 2D spatial data

Usage

```
showPattern2D(  
  gobject,  
  spatPatObj,  
  dimension = 1,  
  trim = c(0.02, 0.98),  
  background_color = "white",  
  grid_border_color = "grey",  
  show_legend = T,  
  point_size = 1,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "showPattern2D"  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>spatPatObj</code> | Output from <code>detectSpatialPatterns</code> |
| <code>dimension</code> | dimension to plot |
| <code>trim</code> | Trim ends of the PC values. |
| <code>background_color</code> | background color for plot |
| <code>grid_border_color</code> | color for grid |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend of ggplot |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |

Value

ggplot

Examples

`showPattern2D(gobject)`

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| <code>showPattern3D</code> | <i>showPattern3D</i> |
|----------------------------|----------------------|

Description

show patterns for 3D spatial data

Usage

```
showPattern3D(  
  gobject,  
  spatPatObj,  
  dimension = 1,  
  trim = c(0.02, 0.98),  
  background_color = "white",  
  grid_border_color = "grey",  
  show_legend = T,  
  point_size = 1,  
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),  
  custom_ratio = NULL,  
  x_ticks = NULL,  
  y_ticks = NULL,  
  z_ticks = NULL,
```

```

    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "showPattern3D"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>spatPatObj</code> | Output from <code>detectSpatialPatterns</code> |
| <code>dimension</code> | dimension to plot |
| <code>trim</code> | Trim ends of the PC values. |
| <code>background_color</code> | background color for plot |
| <code>grid_border_color</code> | color for grid |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend of plot |
| <code>point_size</code> | adjust the point size |
| <code>axis_scale</code> | scale the axis |
| <code>custom_ratio</code> | customize the scale of the axis |
| <code>x_ticks</code> | the tick number of <code>x_axis</code> |
| <code>y_ticks</code> | the tick number of <code>y_axis</code> |
| <code>z_ticks</code> | the tick number of <code>z_axis</code> |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return plot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |

Value

plotly

Examples

```
showPattern3D(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| showPatternGenes | <i>showPatternGenes</i> |
|------------------|-------------------------|

Description

show genes correlated with spatial patterns

Usage

```
showPatternGenes(
  gobject,
  spatPatObj,
  dimension = 1,
  top_pos_genes = 5,
  top_neg_genes = 5,
  point_size = 1,
  return_DT = FALSE,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "showPatternGenes"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| spatPatObj | Output from detectSpatialPatterns |
| dimension | dimension to plot genes for. |
| top_pos_genes | Top positively correlated genes. |
| top_neg_genes | Top negatively correlated genes. |
| point_size | size of points |
| return_DT | if TRUE, it will return the data.table used to generate the plots |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
showPatternGenes(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| showProcessingSteps | <i>showProcessingSteps</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------------|

Description

shows the sequential processing steps that were performed in a summarized format

Usage

```
showProcessingSteps(gobject)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object

Value

list of processing steps and names

Examples

```
showProcessingSteps(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| showTopGeneToGene | <i>showTopGeneToGene</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Show enriched/depleted gene-gene enrichments

Usage

```
showTopGeneToGene(  
  GTGscore,  
  top_interactions = 10,  
  direction = c("increased", "decreased"),  
  complement_data = T,  
  subset_cell_ints = NULL,  
  subset_genes = NULL  
)
```

Arguments

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| GTGscore | GTGscore, output from getGeneToGeneScores() |
| top_interactions | number of top gene-gene enrichments to show |
| direction | show top increased or decreased gene-gene enrichments |
| complement_data | include non-enriched gene-gene scores from other cell-cell interactions |
| subset_cell_ints | subset cell-cell interactions to show |
| subset_genes | subset genes to show |

Details

[Give more details ...](#)

Value

ggplot barplot

Examples

```
showTopGeneToGene(scores)
```

| | |
|---------|----------------|
| signPCA | <i>signPCA</i> |
|---------|----------------|

Description

identify significant prinicipal components (PCs)

Usage

```
signPCA(  
  gobject,  
  method = c("screeplot", "jackstraw"),  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  reduction = c("cells", "genes"),  
  genes_to_use = NULL,  
  scale_unit = T,  
  ncp = 50,  
  scree_labels = T,  
  scree_ylim = c(0, 10),  
  jack_iter = 10,  
  jack_threshold = 0.01,  
  jack_verbose = T,  
  show_plot = NA,  
  return_plot = NA,  
  save_plot = NA,  
  save_param = list(),  
  default_save_name = "signPCA",  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| method | method to use to identify significant PCs |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| reduction | cells or genes |
| genes_to_use | subset of genes to use for PCA |
| scale_unit | scale features before PCA |

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ncp</code> | number of principal components to calculate |
| <code>scree_labels</code> | show labels on scree plot |
| <code>scree_ylim</code> | y-axis limits on scree plot |
| <code>jack_iter</code> | number of iterations for jackstraw |
| <code>jack_threshold</code> | p-value threshold to call a PC significant |
| <code>jack_verbose</code> | show progress of jackstraw method |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters for PCA |

Details

Two different methods can be used to assess the number of relevant or significant principal components (PC's). Screeplot works by plotting the explained variance of each individual PC in a barplot and then you can identify which PC does not contribute anymore (= 'elbow method'). The Jackstraw method used the `permutationPA` function from the `jackstraw` packages. By systematically permuting genes it identifies robust, and thus significant, PCs.

Value

ggplot object for scree method and matrix of p-values for jackstraw

Examples

```
signPCA(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| <code>spatCellPlot</code> | <i>spatCellPlot</i> |
|---------------------------|---------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatCellPlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>cell_annotation_values</code> | numeric cell annotation columns |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |
| <code>show_center_label</code> | plot label of selected clusters |
| <code>center_point_size</code> | size of center points |
| <code>label_size</code> | size of labels |
| <code>label_fontface</code> | font of labels |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>network_alpha</code> | alpha of spatial network |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>grid_color</code> | color of spatial grid |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | point size of not selected cells |
| <code>other_cells_alpha</code> | alpha of not selected cells |

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

spatCellPlot(gobject)

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| spatCellPlot2D | <i>spatCellPlot2D</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatCellPlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  spat_enr_names = NULL,  
  cell_annotation_values,  
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),  
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,  
  gradient_limits = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  show_cluster_center = F,  
  show_center_label = F,  
  center_point_size = 4,  
  center_point_border_col = "black",  
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
```

```

    label_size = 4,
    label_fontface = "bold",
    show_network = F,
    spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
    network_color = NULL,
    network_alpha = 1,
    show_grid = F,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    grid_color = NULL,
    show_other_cells = T,
    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    other_point_size = 1,
    other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
    coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
    show_legend = T,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatCellPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>cell_annotation_values</code> | numeric cell annotation columns |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| label_fontface | font of labels |
| show_network | show underlying spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| network_color | color of spatial network |
| network_alpha | alpha of spatial network |
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| other_point_size | point size of not selected cells |
| other_cells_alpha | alpha of not selected cells |
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
spatCellPlot2D(gobject)
```

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| spatDimCellPlot | <i>spatDimCellPlot</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------|

Description

Visualize numerical features of cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in 2D

Usage

```
spatDimCellPlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>plot_alignment</code> | direction to align plot |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>cell_annotation_values</code> | numeric cell annotation columns |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>sdimx</code> | = spatial dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>sdimy</code> | = spatial dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>dim_point_size</code> | size of points in dim. reduction space |
| <code>dim_point_border_col</code> | border color of points in dim. reduction space |
| <code>dim_point_border_stroke</code> | border stroke of points in dim. reduction space |
| <code>spat_point_size</code> | size of spatial points |
| <code>spat_point_border_col</code> | border color of spatial points |
| <code>spat_point_border_stroke</code> | border stroke of spatial points |

```

dim_show_cluster_center
    show the center of each cluster
dim_show_center_label
    provide a label for each cluster
dim_center_point_size
    size of the center point
dim_center_point_border_col
    border color of center point
dim_center_point_border_stroke
    stroke size of center point
dim_label_size size of the center label
dim_label_fontface
    font of the center label
spat_show_cluster_center
    show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label
    provide a label for each cluster
spat_center_point_size
    size of the center point
spat_label_size
    size of the center label
spat_label_fontface
    font of the center label
show_NN_network
    show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use
    type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
nn_network_name
    name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
dim_edge_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
spat_show_network
    show spatial network
spatial_network_name
    name of spatial network to use
spat_network_color
    color of spatial network
spat_show_grid show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name
    name of spatial grid to use
spat_grid_color
    color of spatial grid
show_other_cells
    display not selected cells
other_cell_color
    color of not selected cells
dim_other_point_size
    size of not selected dim cells
spat_other_point_size
    size of not selected spat cells

```

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| spat_other_cells_alpha | alpha of not selected spat cells |
| coord_fix_ratio | ratio for coordinates |
| cow_n_col | cowplot param: how many columns |
| cow_rel_h | cowplot param: relative height |
| cow_rel_w | cowplot param: relative width |
| cow_align | cowplot param: how to align |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

spatDimCellPlot(gobject)

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| spatDimCellPlot2D | <i>spatDimCellPlot2D</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Visualize numerical features of cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in 2D

Usage

```
spatDimCellPlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),  
  spat_enr_names = NULL,  
  cell_annotation_values,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",
```

```

cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
gradient_midpoint = NULL,
gradient_limits = NULL,
select_cell_groups = NULL,
select_cells = NULL,
dim_point_size = 1,
dim_point_border_col = "black",
dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
spat_point_size = 1,
spat_point_border_col = "black",
spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
dim_show_cluster_center = F,
dim_show_center_label = T,
dim_center_point_size = 4,
dim_center_point_border_col = "black",
dim_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
dim_label_size = 4,
dim_label_fontface = "bold",
spat_show_cluster_center = F,
spat_show_center_label = F,
spat_center_point_size = 4,
spat_center_point_border_col = "black",
spat_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
spat_label_size = 4,
spat_label_fontface = "bold",
show_NN_network = F,
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
nn_network_name = "sNN.pca",
dim_edge_alpha = 0.5,
spat_show_network = F,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
spat_network_color = "red",
spat_network_alpha = 0.5,
spat_show_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spat_grid_color = "green",
show_other_cells = TRUE,
other_cell_color = "grey",
dim_other_point_size = 0.5,
spat_other_point_size = 0.5,
spat_other_cells_alpha = 0.5,
coord_fix_ratio = NULL,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_legend = T,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatDimCellPlot2D"

```

)

Arguments

gobject giotto object
plot_alignment direction to align plot
spat_enr_names names of spatial enrichment results to include
cell_annotation_values
 numeric cell annotation columns
dim_reduction_to_use
 dimension reduction to use
dim_reduction_name
 dimension reduction name
dim1_to_use dimension to use on x-axis
dim2_to_use dimension to use on y-axis
sdimx = spatial dimension to use on x-axis
sdimy = spatial dimension to use on y-axis
cell_color_gradient
 vector with 3 colors for numeric data
gradient_midpoint
 midpoint for color gradient
gradient_limits
 vector with lower and upper limits
select_cell_groups
 select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter
select_cells select subset of cells based on cell IDs
dim_point_size size of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_col
 border color of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_stroke
 border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spat_point_size
 size of spatial points
spat_point_border_col
 border color of spatial points
spat_point_border_stroke
 border stroke of spatial points
dim_show_cluster_center
 show the center of each cluster
dim_show_center_label
 provide a label for each cluster
dim_center_point_size
 size of the center point
dim_center_point_border_col
 border color of center point
dim_center_point_border_stroke
 stroke size of center point

```

dim_label_size  size of the center label
dim_label_fontface
                font of the center label
spat_show_cluster_center
                show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label
                provide a label for each cluster
spat_center_point_size
                size of the center point
spat_label_size
                size of the center label
spat_label_fontface
                font of the center label
show_NN_network
                show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use
                type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
nn_network_name
                name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
dim_edge_alpha  column to use for alpha of the edges
spat_show_network
                show spatial network
spatial_network_name
                name of spatial network to use
spat_network_color
                color of spatial network
spat_show_grid  show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name
                name of spatial grid to use
spat_grid_color
                color of spatial grid
show_other_cells
                display not selected cells
other_cell_color
                color of not selected cells
dim_other_point_size
                size of not selected dim cells
spat_other_point_size
                size of not selected spat cells
spat_other_cells_alpha
                alpha of not selected spat cells
coord_fix_ratio
                ratio for coordinates
cow_n_col      cowplot param: how many columns
cow_rel_h      cowplot param: relative height
cow_rel_w      cowplot param: relative width
cow_align      cowplot param: how to align

```

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
spatDimCellPlot2D(gobject)
```

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| spatDimGenePlot | <i>spatDimGenePlot</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | gene expression values to use |
| plot_alignment | direction to align plot |
| genes | genes to show |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimension reduction name |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| dim_point_size | dim reduction plot: point size |
| dim_point_border_col | color of border around points |

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| dim_point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| edge_alpha_dim | dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges |
| scale_alpha_with_expression | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| spatial_point_size | spatial plot: point size |
| spatial_point_border_col | color of border around points |
| spatial_point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| midpoint | size of point (cell) |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| cow_n_col | cowplot param: how many columns |
| cow_rel_h | cowplot param: relative height |
| cow_rel_w | cowplot param: relative width |
| cow_align | cowplot param: how to align |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plots |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimGenePlot3D](#)

Examples

```
spatDimGenePlot(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| spatDimGenePlot2D | <i>spatDimGenePlot2D</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot2D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  genes,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  point_size = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_NN_network = F,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  edge_alpha_dim = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_point_size = 1,
  spatial_point_border_col = "black",
  spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  genes_high_color = "red",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatDimGenePlot2D"
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| expression_values | gene expression values to use |
| plot_alignment | direction to align plot |
| genes | genes to show |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimension reduction name |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| dim_point_border_col | color of border around points |
| dim_point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| edge_alpha_dim | dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges |
| scale_alpha_with_expression | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| spatial_point_size | spatial plot: point size |
| spatial_point_border_col | color of border around points |
| spatial_point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| midpoint | size of point (cell) |
| cow_n_col | cowplot param: how many columns |
| cow_rel_h | cowplot param: relative height |
| cow_rel_w | cowplot param: relative width |
| cow_align | cowplot param: how to align |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plots |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |
| dim_point_size | dim reduction plot: point size |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimGenePlot3D](#)

Examples

```
spatDimGenePlot2D(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| spatDimGenePlot3D | <i>spatDimGenePlot3D</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
spatDimGenePlot3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  genes,
  cluster_column = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1.5,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  label_size = 16,
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_high_color = "red",
  dim_point_size = 3,
```

```

nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
show_spatial_network = F,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
network_color = "lightgray",
spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
show_spatial_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spatial_grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
spatial_point_size = 3,
legend_text_size = 12,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatDimGenePlot3D"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>plot_alignment</code> | direction to align plot |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>dim3_to_use</code> | dimension to use on z-axis |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to show |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>dim_point_size</code> | dim reduction plot: point size |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>spatial_point_size</code> | spatial plot: point size |

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| show_plot | show plots |
| return_plot | return plotly object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |
| edge_alpha_dim | dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges |
| scale_alpha_with_expression | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| show_legend | show legend |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
spatDimGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| spatDimPlot | <i>spatDimPlot</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates 2D

Usage

```
spatDimPlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| plot_alignment | direction to align plot |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimension reduction name |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| sdimx | = spatial dimension to use on x-axis |
| sdimy | = spatial dimension to use on y-axis |
| spat_enr_names | names of spatial enrichment results to include |

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| cell_color_gradient | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| gradient_midpoint | midpoint for color gradient |
| gradient_limits | vector with lower and upper limits |
| select_cell_groups | select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter |
| select_cells | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| dim_point_size | size of points in dim. reduction space |
| dim_point_border_col | border color of points in dim. reduction space |
| dim_point_border_stroke | border stroke of points in dim. reduction space |
| spat_point_size | size of spatial points |
| spat_point_border_col | border color of spatial points |
| spat_point_border_stroke | border stroke of spatial points |
| dim_show_cluster_center | show the center of each cluster |
| dim_show_center_label | provide a label for each cluster |
| dim_center_point_size | size of the center point |
| dim_center_point_border_col | border color of center point |
| dim_center_point_border_stroke | stroke size of center point |
| dim_label_size | size of the center label |
| dim_label_fontface | font of the center label |
| spat_show_cluster_center | show the center of each cluster |
| spat_show_center_label | provide a label for each cluster |
| spat_center_point_size | size of the center point |
| spat_label_size | size of the center label |
| spat_label_fontface | font of the center label |

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| nn_network_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| show_spatial_network | show spatial network |
| spat_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| spat_network_color | color of spatial network |
| show_spatial_grid | show spatial grid |
| spat_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| spat_grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| dim_other_point_size | size of not selected dim cells |
| spat_other_point_size | size of not selected spat cells |
| spat_other_cells_alpha | alpha of not selected spat cells |
| dim_show_legend | show legend of dimension reduction plot |
| spat_show_legend | show legend of spatial plot |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimPlot2D](#) and [spatDimPlot3D](#) for 3D visualization.

Examples

```
spatDimPlot(gobject)
```

spatDimPlot2D

spatDimPlot2D

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates 2D

Usage

```
spatDimPlot2D(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  sdimx = "sdmx",
  sdimy = "sdmy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  dim_point_size = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  spat_point_size = 1,
  spat_point_border_col = "black",
  spat_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  dim_show_cluster_center = F,
  dim_show_center_label = T,
  dim_center_point_size = 4,
  dim_center_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  dim_label_size = 4,
  dim_label_fontface = "bold",
  spat_show_cluster_center = F,
  spat_show_center_label = F,
  spat_center_point_size = 4,
  spat_label_size = 4,
  spat_label_fontface = "bold",
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
```



```

network_name = "sNN.pca",
nn_network_alpha = 0.05,
show_spatial_network = F,
spat_network_name = "spatial_network",
spat_network_color = "blue",
spat_network_alpha = 0.5,
show_spatial_grid = F,
spat_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spat_grid_color = "blue",
show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
dim_other_point_size = 1,
spat_other_point_size = 1,
spat_other_cells_alpha = 0.5,
dim_show_legend = F,
spat_show_legend = F,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spatDimPlot2D"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>plot_alignment</code> | direction to align plot |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>sdmx</code> | = spatial dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>sdmy</code> | = spatial dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |

```

select_cells    select subset of cells based on cell IDs
dim_point_size  size of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_col
                border color of points in dim. reduction space
dim_point_border_stroke
                border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
spat_point_size
                size of spatial points
spat_point_border_col
                border color of spatial points
spat_point_border_stroke
                border stroke of spatial points
dim_show_cluster_center
                show the center of each cluster
dim_show_center_label
                provide a label for each cluster
dim_center_point_size
                size of the center point
dim_center_point_border_col
                border color of center point
dim_center_point_border_stroke
                stroke size of center point
dim_label_size  size of the center label
dim_label_fontface
                font of the center label
spat_show_cluster_center
                show the center of each cluster
spat_show_center_label
                provide a label for each cluster
spat_center_point_size
                size of the center point
spat_label_size
                size of the center label
spat_label_fontface
                font of the center label
show_NN_network
                show underlying NN network
nn_network_to_use
                type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN)
network_name    name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE
nn_network_alpha
                column to use for alpha of the edges
show_spatial_network
                show spatial network
spat_network_name
                name of spatial network to use
spat_network_color
                color of spatial network

```

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| show_spatial_grid | show spatial grid |
| spat_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| spat_grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| dim_other_point_size | size of not selected dim cells |
| spat_other_point_size | size of not selected spat cells |
| spat_other_cells_alpha | alpha of not selected spat cells |
| dim_show_legend | show legend of dimension reduction plot |
| spat_show_legend | show legend of spatial plot |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatDimPlot3D](#)

Examples

```
spatDimPlot2D(gobject)
```

spatDimPlot3D

spatDimPlot3D

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
spatDimPlot3D(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  sdimz = "sdimz",
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 16,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1.5,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_point_size = 3,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
```

```

    legend_text_size = 12,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatDimPlot3D"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>plot_alignment</code> | direction to align plot |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>dim3_to_use</code> | dimension to use on z-axis |
| <code>sdimx</code> | = spatial dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>sdimy</code> | = spatial dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>sdimz</code> | = spatial dimension to use on z-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | show the center of each cluster |
| <code>show_center_label</code> | provide a label for each cluster |
| <code>center_point_size</code> | size of the center point |
| <code>label_size</code> | size of the center label |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | size of not selected cells |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |

dim_point_size size of points in dim. reduction space
 nn_network_alpha column to use for alpha of the edges
 show_spatial_network show spatial network
 spatial_network_name name of spatial network to use
 spatial_network_alpha alpha of spatial network
 show_spatial_grid show spatial grid
 spatial_grid_name name of spatial grid to use
 spatial_grid_color color of spatial grid
 spatial_point_size size of spatial points
 show_plot show plot
 return_plot return ggplot object
 save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
 save_param list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
 default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param
 dim_point_border_col border color of points in dim. reduction space
 dim_point_border_stroke border stroke of points in dim. reduction space
 spatial_network_color color of spatial network
 spatial_other_point_size size of not selected spatial points
 spatial_other_cells_alpha alpha of not selected spatial points
 dim_other_point_size size of not selected dim. reduction points
 show_legend show legend

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
spatDimPlot3D(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------|---------------------|
| spatGenePlot | <i>spatGenePlot</i> |
|--------------|---------------------|

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatGenePlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>...</code> | parameters for <code>cowplot::save_plot()</code> |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to show |
| <code>genes_high_color</code> | color represents high gene expression |
| <code>genes_mid_color</code> | color represents middle gene expression |
| <code>genes_low_color</code> | color represents low gene expression |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>grid_color</code> | color of spatial grid |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>midpoint</code> | expression midpoint |
| <code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code> | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>cow_n_col</code> | cowplot param: how many columns |
| <code>cow_rel_h</code> | cowplot param: relative height |
| <code>cow_rel_w</code> | cowplot param: relative width |
| <code>cow_align</code> | cowplot param: how to align |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| show_plot | show plots |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatGenePlot3D](#) and [spatGenePlot2D](#)

Examples

spatGenePlot(gobject)

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| spatGenePlot2D | <i>spatGenePlot2D</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------|

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatGenePlot2D(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes,  
  genes_high_color = "darkred",  
  genes_mid_color = "white",  
  genes_low_color = "darkblue",  
  show_network = F,  
  network_color = NULL,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  show_grid = F,  
  grid_color = NULL,  
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",  
  midpoint = 0,  
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,  
  point_size = 1,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
)
```



```

    show_legend = T,
    cow_n_col = 2,
    cow_rel_h = 1,
    cow_rel_w = 1,
    cow_align = "h",
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatGenePlot2D"
  )

```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to show |
| <code>genes_high_color</code> | color represents high gene expression |
| <code>genes_mid_color</code> | color represents middle gene expression |
| <code>genes_low_color</code> | color represents low gene expression |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>grid_color</code> | color of spatial grid |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>midpoint</code> | expression midpoint |
| <code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code> | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>cow_n_col</code> | cowplot param: how many columns |
| <code>cow_rel_h</code> | cowplot param: relative height |
| <code>cow_rel_w</code> | cowplot param: relative width |
| <code>cow_align</code> | cowplot param: how to align |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plots |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |
| ... | parameters for cowplot::save_plot() |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatGenePlot3D](#)

Examples

spatGenePlot2D(gobject)

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| spatGenePlot3D | <i>spatGenePlot3D</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------|

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatGenePlot3D(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes,  
  show_network = F,  
  network_color = NULL,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  show_grid = F,  
  cluster_column = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  other_point_size = 1,  
  genes_high_color = NULL,  
  genes_mid_color = "white",  
  genes_low_color = "blue",  
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",  
  point_size = 2,  
)
```

```

    show_legend = T,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    show_plot = NA,
    return_plot = NA,
    save_plot = NA,
    save_param = list(),
    default_save_name = "spatGenePlot3D"
  )

```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to show |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>genes_high_color</code> | color represents high gene expression |
| <code>genes_mid_color</code> | color represents middle gene expression |
| <code>genes_low_color</code> | color represents low gene expression |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plots |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_param</code> | list of saving parameters from <code>all_plots_save_function()</code> |
| <code>default_save_name</code> | default save name for saving, don't change, change <code>save_name</code> in <code>save_param</code> |
| <code>grid_color</code> | color of spatial grid |
| <code>midpoint</code> | expression midpoint |
| <code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code> | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| <code>...</code> | parameters for <code>cowplot::save_plot()</code> |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
spatGenePlot3D(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| Spatial_AEH | <i>Spatial_AEH</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

calculate automatic expression histology with spatialDE method

Usage

```
Spatial_AEH(  
  gobject = NULL,  
  results = NULL,  
  pattern_num = 5,  
  l = 1.05,  
  show_AEH = T,  
  sdimx = NULL,  
  sdimy = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_alpha = 1,  
  low_color = "blue",  
  mid_color = "white",  
  high_color = "red",  
  midpoint = 0,  
  python_path = NULL  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------|
| gobject | Giotto object |
| results | output from spatial_DE |
| pattern_num | the number of gene expression patterns |
| show_AEH | show AEH plot |
| python_path | specify specific path to python if required |

Details

Description.

Value

a list or a dataframe of SVs

Examples

```
Spatial_DE(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------|-------------------|
| Spatial_DE | <i>Spatial_DE</i> |
|------------|-------------------|

Description

calculate spatial variable genes with spatialDE method

Usage

```
Spatial_DE(  
  gobject = NULL,  
  show_plot = T,  
  size = c(4, 2, 1),  
  color = c("blue", "green", "red"),  
  sig_alpha = 0.5,  
  unsig_alpha = 0.5,  
  python_path = NULL  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------|
| gobject | Giotto object |
| show_plot | show FSV plot |
| python_path | specify specific path to python if required |

Details

Description.

Value

a list or a dataframe of SVs

Examples

```
Spatial_DE(gobject)
```

spatPlot

spatPlot

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatPlot(gobject, ...)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |
| <code>show_center_label</code> | plot label of selected clusters |
| <code>center_point_size</code> | size of center points |
| <code>label_size</code> | size of labels |
| <code>label_fontface</code> | font of labels |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| network_color | color of spatial network |
| network_alpha | alpha of spatial network |
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| other_point_size | point size of not selected cells |
| other_cells_alpha | alpha of not selected cells |
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |
| title | title of plot |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)

Examples

```
spatPlot(gobject)
```

spatPlot2D

spatPlot2D

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatPlot2D(
  gobject,
  sdimx = "sdimx",
  sdimy = "sdimy",
  spat_enr_names = NULL,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  cell_color_gradient = c("blue", "white", "red"),
  gradient_midpoint = NULL,
  gradient_limits = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = F,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  show_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = NULL,
  network_alpha = 1,
  show_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  grid_color = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 1,
  other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
  coord_fix_ratio = 0.6,
  title = NULL,
  show_legend = T,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "spatPlot2D"
```


)

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>spat_enr_names</code> | names of spatial enrichment results to include |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>cell_color_gradient</code> | vector with 3 colors for numeric data |
| <code>gradient_midpoint</code> | midpoint for color gradient |
| <code>gradient_limits</code> | vector with lower and upper limits |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |
| <code>show_center_label</code> | plot label of selected clusters |
| <code>center_point_size</code> | size of center points |
| <code>label_size</code> | size of labels |
| <code>label_fontface</code> | font of labels |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>network_alpha</code> | alpha of spatial network |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>grid_color</code> | color of spatial grid |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| other_point_size | point size of not selected cells |
| other_cells_alpha | alpha of not selected cells |
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |
| title | title of plot |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)

Examples

spatPlot2D(gobject)

| | |
|------------|-------------------|
| spatPlot3D | <i>spatPlot3D</i> |
|------------|-------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
spatPlot3D(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx = "sdimx",  
  sdimy = "sdimy",  
  sdimz = "sdimz",  
  point_size = 3,  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,
```

```

select_cell_groups = NULL,
select_cells = NULL,
show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
other_point_size = 0.5,
show_network = F,
network_color = NULL,
network_alpha = 1,
other_cell_alpha = 0.5,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
show_grid = F,
grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
title = "",
show_legend = T,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
show_plot = NA,
return_plot = NA,
save_plot = NA,
save_param = list(),
default_save_name = "spat3D"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>sdimz</code> | z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| title | title of plot |
| show_legend | show legend |
| axis_scale | the way to scale the axis |
| custom_ratio | customize the scale of the plot |
| x_ticks | set the number of ticks on the x-axis |
| y_ticks | set the number of ticks on the y-axis |
| z_ticks | set the number of ticks on the z-axis |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_param | list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function() |
| default_save_name | default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

spatPlot3D(gobject)

specificCellCellcommunicationScores

specificCellCellcommunicationScores

Description

Specific Cell-Cell communication scores based on spatial expression of interacting cells

Usage

```
specificCellCellcommunicationScores(  
  gobject,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  cluster_column = "cell_types",  
  random_iter = 100,  
  cell_type_1 = "astrocyte",  
  cell_type_2 = "endothelial",  
  gene_set_1,
```

```

    gene_set_2,
    log2FC_addendum = 0.1,
    min_observations = 2,
    verbose = T
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object to use |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | spatial network to use for identifying interacting cells |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column with cell type information |
| <code>random_iter</code> | number of iterations |
| <code>cell_type_1</code> | first cell type |
| <code>cell_type_2</code> | second cell type |
| <code>gene_set_1</code> | first specific gene set from gene pairs |
| <code>gene_set_2</code> | second specific gene set from gene pairs |
| <code>log2FC_addendum</code> | addendum to add when calculating log2FC |
| <code>min_observations</code> | minimum number of interactions needed to be considered |
| <code>verbose</code> | verbose |

Details

Details will follow.

Value

Cell-Cell communication scores for gene pairs based on spatial interaction

Examples

```
specificCellCellcommunicationScores(gobject)
```

```
split_dendrogram_in_two
      split_dendrogram_in_two
```

Description

Merge selected clusters based on pairwise correlation scores and size of cluster.

Usage

```
split_dendrogram_in_two(dend)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| <code>dend</code> | dendrogram object |
|-------------------|-------------------|

Value

list of two dendrograms and height of node

Examples

```
split_dendrogram_in_two(dend)
```

```
stitchFieldCoordinates
```

```
stitchFieldCoordinates
```

Description

Helper function to stitch field coordinates together to form one complete picture

Usage

```
stitchFieldCoordinates(
  location_file,
  offset_file,
  cumulate_offset_x = F,
  cumulate_offset_y = F,
  field_col = "Field of View",
  X_coord_col = "X",
  Y_coord_col = "Y",
  reverse_final_x = F,
  reverse_final_y = T
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| location_file | location dataframe with X and Y coordinates |
| offset_file | dataframe that describes the offset for each field (see details) |
| cumulate_offset_x | (boolean) Do the x-axis offset values need to be cumulated? |
| cumulate_offset_y | (boolean) Do the y-axis offset values need to be cumulated? |
| field_col | column that indicates the field within the location_file |
| X_coord_col | column that indicates the x coordinates |
| Y_coord_col | column that indicates the x coordinates |
| reverse_final_x | (boolean) Do the final x coordinates need to be reversed? |
| reverse_final_y | (boolean) Do the final y coordinates need to be reversed? |

Details

Stitching of fields:

- 1. have cell locations: at least 3 columns: field, X, Y
- 2. create offset file: offset file has 3 columns: field, x_offset, y_offset
- 3. create new cell location file by stitching original cell locations with stitchFieldCoordinates
- 4. provide new cell location file to [createGiottoObject](#)

Value

Updated location dataframe with new X ['X_final'] and Y ['Y_final'] coordinates

Examples

```
stitchFieldCoordinates(gobject)
```

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| subClusterCells | <i>subClusterCells</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------|

Description

subcluster cells

Usage

```
subClusterCells(
  gobject,
  name = "sub_clus",
  cluster_method = c("leiden", "louvain_community", "louvain_multinet"),
  cluster_column = NULL,
  selected_clusters = NULL,
  hvg_param = list(reverse_log_scale = T, difference_in_variance = 1, expression_values
    = "normalized"),
  hvg_min_perc_cells = 5,
  hvg_mean_expr_det = 1,
  use_all_genes_as_hvg = FALSE,
  min_nr_of_hvg = 5,
  pca_param = list(expression_values = "normalized", scale_unit = T),
  nn_param = list(dimensions_to_use = 1:20),
  k_neighbors = 10,
  resolution = 1,
  gamma = 1,
  omega = 1,
  python_path = NULL,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  return_gobject = TRUE,
  verbose = T,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>name</code> | name for new clustering result |
| <code>cluster_method</code> | clustering method to use |
| <code>cluster_column</code> | cluster column to subcluster |
| <code>selected_clusters</code> | only do subclustering on these clusters |
| <code>hvg_param</code> | parameters for calculateHVG |
| <code>hvg_min_perc_cells</code> | threshold for detection in min percentage of cells |
| <code>hvg_mean_expr_det</code> | threshold for mean expression level in cells with detection |
| <code>use_all_genes_as_hvg</code> | forces all genes to be HVG and to be used as input for PCA |
| <code>min_nr_of_hvg</code> | minimum number of HVG, or all genes will be used as input for PCA |
| <code>pca_param</code> | parameters for runPCA |
| <code>nn_param</code> | parameters for parameters for createNearestNetwork |
| <code>k_neighbors</code> | number of k for createNearestNetwork |
| <code>resolution</code> | resolution |
| <code>gamma</code> | gamma |
| <code>omega</code> | omega |
| <code>python_path</code> | specify specific path to python if required |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use |
| <code>return_gobject</code> | boolean: return giotto object (default = TRUE) |
| <code>verbose</code> | verbose |
| <code>...</code> | additional parameters |

Details

Description of Louvain clustering method.

Value

giotto object appended with new cluster

Examples

```
subClusterCells(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------|---------------------|
| subsetGiotto | <i>subsetGiotto</i> |
|--------------|---------------------|

Description

subsets Giotto object including previous analyses.

Usage

```
subsetGiotto(gobject, cell_ids = NULL, gene_ids = NULL)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------|------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| cell_ids | cell IDs to keep |
| gene_ids | gene IDs to keep |

Value

giotto object

Examples

```
subsetGiotto(gobject)
```

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| viewHMRResults | <i>viewHMRResults</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------|

Description

View results from doHMRF.

Usage

```
viewHMRResults(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFoutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  third_dim = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| HMRFoutput | HMRF output from doHMRF |
| k | number of HMRF domains |
| betas_to_view | results from different betas that you want to view |
| ... | paramters to visPlot() |

Details

Description ...

Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

See Also

[visPlot](#)

Examples

`viewHMRFresults(gobject)`

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <code>viewHMRFresults2D</code> | <i><code>viewHMRFresults2D</code></i> |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

Description

View results from doHMRF.

Usage

```
viewHMRFresults2D(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFoutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  third_dim = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>HMRFoutput</code> | HMRF output from doHMRF |
| <code>k</code> | number of HMRF domains |
| <code>betas_to_view</code> | results from different betas that you want to view |
| <code>...</code> | paramters to <code>visPlot()</code> |

Details

Description ...

Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

See Also

[spatPlot2D](#)

Examples

```
viewHMRResults2D(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| viewHMRResults3D | <i>viewHMRResults3D</i> |
|------------------|-------------------------|

Description

View results from doHMRF.

Usage

```
viewHMRResults3D(  
  gobject,  
  HMRFoutput,  
  k = NULL,  
  betas_to_view = NULL,  
  third_dim = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| HMRFoutput | HMRF output from doHMRF |
| k | number of HMRF domains |
| betas_to_view | results from different betas that you want to view |
| ... | paramters to visPlot() |

Details

Description ...

Value

spatial plots with HMRF domains

See Also

[spatPlot3D](#)

Examples

```
viewHMRResults3D(gobject)
```

violinPlot

violinPlot

Description

Creates heatmap based on identified clusters

Usage

```
violinPlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  cluster_column,
  cluster_custom_order = NULL,
  color_violin = c("genes", "cluster"),
  cluster_color_code = NULL,
  strip_position = c("top", "right", "left", "bottom"),
  strip_text = 7,
  axis_text_x_size = 10,
  axis_text_y_size = 6,
  show_plot = NA,
  return_plot = NA,
  save_plot = NA,
  save_param = list(),
  default_save_name = "violinPlot"
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | expression values to use |
| genes | genes to plot |
| cluster_column | name of column to use for clusters |
| cluster_custom_order | custom order of clusters |
| color_violin | color violin according to genes or clusters |
| cluster_color_code | color code for clusters |
| strip_position | position of gene labels |
| strip_text | size of strip text |
| axis_text_x_size | size of x-axis text |
| axis_text_y_size | size of y-axis text |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |

save_plot directly save the plot [boolean]
save_param list of saving parameters from all_plots_save_function()
default_save_name default save name for saving, don't change, change save_name in save_param

Details

Correlation heatmap of clusters vs genes.

Value

ggplot

Examples

violinPlot(gobject)

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| visDimGenePlot | <i>visDimGenePlot</i> |
|----------------|-----------------------|

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimGenePlot(  
  gobject,  
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),  
  genes = NULL,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  dim3_to_use = NULL,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  network_color = "lightgray",  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,  
  point_size = 1,  
  genes_high_color = NULL,  
  genes_mid_color = "white",  
  genes_low_color = "blue",  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  midpoint = 0,  
  cow_n_col = 2,  
  cow_rel_h = 1,  
  cow_rel_w = 1,
```

```

cow_align = "h",
show_legend = T,
plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
show_plots = F
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to show |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>dim3_to_use</code> | dimension to use on z-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>edge_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code> | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>midpoint</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>cow_n_col</code> | cowplot param: how many columns |
| <code>cow_rel_h</code> | cowplot param: relative height |
| <code>cow_rel_w</code> | cowplot param: relative width |
| <code>cow_align</code> | cowplot param: how to align |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>show_plots</code> | show plots |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visDimGenePlot(gobject)
```

```
visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot
      visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot
```

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = "red",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plots = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | gene expression values to use |
| genes | genes to show |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimension reduction name |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| scale_alpha_with_expression | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| midpoint | size of point (cell) |
| cow_n_col | cowplot param: how many columns |
| cow_rel_h | cowplot param: relative height |
| cow_rel_w | cowplot param: relative width |
| cow_align | cowplot param: how to align |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plots | show plots |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

```
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly
```

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  show_legend = T,
  show_plots = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | gene expression values to use |
| genes | genes to show |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimension reduction name |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| dim3_to_use | dimension to use on z-axis |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plots | show plots |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

| | |
|------------|-------------------|
| visDimPlot | <i>visDimPlot</i> |
|------------|-------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimPlot(  
  gobject,  
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",  
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",  
  dim1_to_use = 1,  
  dim2_to_use = 2,  
  dim3_to_use = NULL,  
  show_NN_network = F,  
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",  
  network_name = "sNN.pca",  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  color_as_factor = T,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  other_point_size = 0.5,  
  show_cluster_center = F,  
  show_center_label = T,  
  center_point_size = 4,  
  center_point_border_col = "black",  
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  label_size = 4,  
  label_fontface = "bold",  
  edge_alpha = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),  
  show_legend = T,  
  show_plot = F,  
  return_plot = TRUE,  
  save_plot = F,  
  save_dir = NULL,
```

```

    save_folder = NULL,
    save_name = NULL,
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>dim3_to_use</code> | dimension to use on z-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |
| <code>show_center_label</code> | plot label of selected clusters |
| <code>center_point_size</code> | size of center points |
| <code>label_size</code> | size of labels |
| <code>label_fontface</code> | font of labels |
| <code>edge_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_dir</code> | directory to save the plot |

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| save_folder | (optional) folder in directory to save the plot |
| save_name | name of plot |
| save_format | format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...) |
| show_saved_plot | load & display the saved plot |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
visDimPlot(gobject)
```

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| visDimPlot_2D_ggplot | <i>visDimPlot_2D_ggplot</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimPlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  center_point_border_col = "black",
  center_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  label_size = 4,
  label_fontface = "bold",
```

```

    edge_alpha = NULL,
    point_size = 1,
    point_border_col = "black",
    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    show_legend = T,
    show_plot = F,
    return_plot = TRUE,
    save_plot = F,
    save_dir = NULL,
    save_folder = NULL,
    save_name = NULL,
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>other_point_size</code> | size of not selected cells |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |
| <code>show_center_label</code> | plot label of selected clusters |
| <code>center_point_size</code> | size of center points |

| | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| label_size | size of labels |
| label_fontface | font of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_legend | show legend |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visDimPlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

visDimPlot_2D_plotly *visDimPlot_2D_plotly*

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimPlot_2D_plotly(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
```

```

        center_point_size = 4,
        label_size = 4,
        edge_alpha = NULL,
        point_size = 5
    )

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>show_cluster_center</code> | plot center of selected clusters |
| <code>show_center_label</code> | plot label of selected clusters |
| <code>center_point_size</code> | size of center points |
| <code>label_size</code> | size of labels |
| <code>edge_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
visDimPlot_2D_plotly(gobject)
```

visDimPlot_3D_plotly *visDimPlot_3D_plotly*

Description

Visualize cells according to dimension reduction coordinates

Usage

```
visDimPlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = 3,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 4,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimension reduction name |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| dim3_to_use | dimension to use on z-axis |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| show_cluster_center | plot center of selected clusters |
| show_center_label | plot label of selected clusters |
| center_point_size | size of center points |
| label_size | size of labels |
| edge_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
visDimPlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| visForceLayoutPlot | <i>visForceLayoutPlot</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to forced layout algorithm coordinates

Usage

```
visForceLayoutPlot(
  gobject,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  layout_name = "layout",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  show_NN_network = T,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = F,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  point_size = 1,
```

```

    point_border_col = "black",
    point_border_stroke = 0.1,
    show_legend = T,
    show_plot = F,
    return_plot = TRUE,
    save_plot = F,
    save_dir = NULL,
    save_folder = NULL,
    save_name = NULL,
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | NN network to use |
| <code>layout_name</code> | name of layout to use |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>edge_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>return_plot</code> | return ggplot object |
| <code>save_plot</code> | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| <code>save_dir</code> | directory to save the plot |
| <code>save_folder</code> | (optional) folder in directory to save the plot |
| <code>save_name</code> | name of plot |
| <code>save_format</code> | format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...) |
| <code>show_saved_plot</code> | load & display the saved plot |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visForceLayoutPlot(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| visGenePlot | <i>visGenePlot</i> |
|-------------|--------------------|

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visGenePlot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  midpoint = 0,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  show_plots = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to show |
| <code>genes_high_color</code> | color represents high gene expression |
| <code>genes_mid_color</code> | color represents middle gene expression |
| <code>genes_low_color</code> | color represents low gene expression |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>grid_color</code> | color of spatial grid |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>midpoint</code> | expression midpoint |
| <code>scale_alpha_with_expression</code> | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>cow_n_col</code> | cowplot param: how many columns |
| <code>cow_rel_h</code> | cowplot param: relative height |
| <code>cow_rel_w</code> | cowplot param: relative width |
| <code>cow_align</code> | cowplot param: how to align |
| <code>axis_scale</code> | three mode to adjust axis scale |
| <code>x_ticks</code> | number of ticks on x axis |
| <code>y_ticks</code> | number of ticks on y axis |
| <code>z_ticks</code> | number of ticks on z axis |
| <code>plot_method</code> | two methods of plot |
| <code>show_plots</code> | show plots |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
visGenePlot(gobject)
```

```
visGenePlot_2D_ggplot  visGenePlot_2D_ggplot
```

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visGenePlot_2D_ggplot(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  genes_high_color = "darkred",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "darkblue",
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  midpoint = 0,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  point_size = 1,
  point_border_col = "black",
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_legend = T,
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  show_plots = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| expression_values | gene expression values to use |
| genes | genes to show |
| genes_high_color | color represents high gene expression |
| genes_mid_color | color represents middle gene expression |

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| genes_low_color | color represents low gene expression |
| show_network | show underlying spatial network |
| network_color | color of spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| midpoint | expression midpoint |
| scale_alpha_with_expression | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| point_border_col | color of border around points |
| point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_legend | show legend |
| cow_n_col | cowplot param: how many columns |
| cow_rel_h | cowplot param: relative height |
| cow_rel_w | cowplot param: relative width |
| cow_align | cowplot param: how to align |
| show_plots | show plots |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visGenePlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

visGenePlot_3D_plotly *visGenePlot_3D_plotly*

Description

Visualize cells and gene expression according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visGenePlot_3D_plotly(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  genes,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = NULL,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  edge_alpha = NULL,
  show_grid = F,
  genes_high_color = NULL,
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  point_size = 1,
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  show_plots = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to show |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>genes_high_color</code> | color represents high gene expression |
| <code>genes_mid_color</code> | color represents middle gene expression |
| <code>genes_low_color</code> | color represents low gene expression |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>axis_scale</code> | three mode to adjust axis scale |
| <code>x_ticks</code> | number of ticks on x axis |
| <code>y_ticks</code> | number of ticks on y axis |

| | |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| z_ticks | number of ticks on z axis |
| show_plots | show plots |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| cow_n_col | cowplot param: how many columns |
| cow_rel_h | cowplot param: relative height |
| cow_rel_w | cowplot param: relative width |
| cow_align | cowplot param: how to align |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
visGenePlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

| | |
|---------|----------------|
| visPlot | <i>visPlot</i> |
|---------|----------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visPlot(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx = NULL,  
  sdimy = NULL,  
  sdimz = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  color_as_factor = T,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  show_network = F,  
  network_color = NULL,  
  network_alpha = 1,  
  other_cells_alpha = 0.1,  
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",  
  show_grid = F,  
)
```



```

    grid_color = NULL,
    grid_alpha = 1,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    coord_fix_ratio = 0.6,
    title = "",
    show_legend = T,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
    show_plot = F,
    return_plot = TRUE,
    save_plot = F,
    save_dir = NULL,
    save_folder = NULL,
    save_name = NULL,
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>sdimz</code> | z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz') |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |
| title | title of plot |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_dir | directory to save the plot |
| save_folder | (optional) folder in directory to save the plot |
| save_name | name of plot |
| save_format | format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...) |
| show_saved_plot | load & display the saved plot |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

visPlot(gobject)

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| visPlot_2D_ggplot | <i>visPlot_2D_ggplot</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visPlot_2D_ggplot(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx = NULL,  
  sdimy = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  point_border_col = "black",  
  point_border_stroke = 0.1,  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,
```

```

    color_as_factor = T,
    select_cell_groups = NULL,
    select_cells = NULL,
    show_other_cells = T,
    other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
    show_network = F,
    network_color = NULL,
    network_alpha = 1,
    other_cells_alpha = 0.1,
    spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
    show_grid = F,
    grid_color = NULL,
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    coord_fix_ratio = 0.6,
    title = "",
    show_legend = T,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    show_plot = F,
    return_plot = TRUE,
    save_plot = F,
    save_dir = NULL,
    save_folder = NULL,
    save_name = NULL,
    save_format = NULL,
    show_saved_plot = F,
    ...
  )

```

Arguments

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| show_network | show underlying spatial network |
| network_color | color of spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| coord_fix_ratio | fix ratio between x and y-axis |
| title | title of plot |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_dir | directory to save the plot |
| save_folder | (optional) folder in directory to save the plot |
| save_name | name of plot |
| save_format | format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...) |
| show_saved_plot | load & display the saved plot |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visPlot_2D_ggplot(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| visPlot_2D_plotly | <i>visPlot_2D_plotly</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visPlot_2D_plotly(
  gobject,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  point_size = 3,
  cell_color = NULL,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  other_point_size = 0.5,
  show_network = F,
  network_color = "lightgray",
  network_alpha = 1,
  other_cell_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  show_grid = F,
  grid_color = NULL,
  grid_alpha = 1,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  show_legend = T,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  show_plot = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| select_cell_groups | select a subset of the groups from cell_color |
| show_network | show underlying spatial network |
| network_color | color of spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| show_grid | show spatial grid |
| grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| grid_alpha | alpha of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

visPlot_2D_plotly(gobject)

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| visPlot_3D_plotly | <i>visPlot_3D_plotly</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial coordinates

Usage

```
visPlot_3D_plotly(  
  gobject,  
  sdimx = NULL,  
  sdimy = NULL,  
  sdimz = NULL,  
  point_size = 3,  
  cell_color = NULL,  
  cell_color_code = NULL,  
  select_cell_groups = NULL,  
  select_cells = NULL,  
  show_other_cells = T,  
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",  
  other_point_size = 0.5,  
  show_network = F,
```

```

    network_color = NULL,
    network_alpha = 1,
    other_cell_alpha = 0.5,
    spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
    spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
    title = "",
    show_legend = T,
    axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
    custom_ratio = NULL,
    x_ticks = NULL,
    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL,
    show_plot = F
  )

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>sdimz</code> | z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz') |
| <code>point_size</code> | size of point (cell) |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select a subset of the groups from <code>cell_color</code> |
| <code>show_network</code> | show underlying spatial network |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>title</code> | title of plot |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |
| <code>point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>show_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>grid_color</code> | color of spatial grid |
| <code>coord_fix_ratio</code> | fix ratio between x and y-axis |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visPlot_3D_plotly(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| visSpatDimGenePlot | <i>visSpatDimGenePlot</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------------|

Description

integration of visSpatDimGenePlot_2D(ggplot) and visSpatDimGenePlot_3D(plotly)

Usage

```
visSpatDimGenePlot(
  gobject,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  genes,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  edge_alpha_dim = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  label_size = 16,
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_high_color = "red",
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
```



```

show_spatial_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spatial_grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
spatial_point_size = 3,
spatial_point_border_col = "black",
spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
legend_text_size = 12,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
midpoint = 0,
point_size = 1,
cow_n_col = 2,
cow_rel_h = 1,
cow_rel_w = 1,
cow_align = "h",
show_legend = T,
show_plots = F
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>expression_values</code> | gene expression values to use |
| <code>plot_alignment</code> | direction to align plot |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>dim3_to_use</code> | dimension to use on z-axis |
| <code>sdimx</code> | x-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimx') |
| <code>sdimy</code> | y-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimy') |
| <code>sdimz</code> | z-axis dimension name (default = 'sdimz') |
| <code>genes</code> | genes to show |
| <code>dim_point_border_col</code> | color of border around points |
| <code>dim_point_border_stroke</code> | stroke size of border around points |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| edge_alpha_dim | dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges |
| scale_alpha_with_expression | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| label_size | size for the label |
| genes_low_color | color to represent low expression of gene |
| genes_high_color | color to represent high expression of gene |
| dim_point_size | dim reduction plot: point size |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| spatial_point_size | spatial plot: point size |
| spatial_point_border_col | color of border around points |
| spatial_point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| legend_text_size | the size of the text in legend |
| axis_scale | three modes to adjust axis scale ratio |
| custom_ratio | set the axis scale ratio on custom |
| x_ticks | number of ticks on x axis |
| y_ticks | number of ticks on y axis |
| z_ticks | number of ticks on z axis |
| midpoint | size of point (cell) |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| cow_n_col | cowplot param: how many columns |
| cow_rel_h | cowplot param: relative height |
| cow_rel_w | cowplot param: relative width |
| cow_align | cowplot param: how to align |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
visSpatDimGenePlot(gobject)
```

visSpatDimGenePlot_2D *visSpatDimGenePlot_2D*

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot mode

Usage

```
visSpatDimGenePlot_2D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  genes,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  point_size = 1,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  show_NN_network = F,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  edge_alpha_dim = NULL,
  scale_alpha_with_expression = FALSE,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_point_size = 1,
  spatial_point_border_col = "black",
  spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  midpoint = 0,
  genes_high_color = "red",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  cow_n_col = 2,
  cow_rel_h = 1,
  cow_rel_w = 1,
  cow_align = "h",
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  show_legend = T,
  show_plots = F
)
```

Arguments

gobject giotto object

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| expression_values | gene expression values to use |
| plot_alignment | direction to align plot |
| genes | genes to show |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimension reduction name |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| point_size | size of point (cell) |
| dim_point_border_col | color of border around points |
| dim_point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| edge_alpha_dim | dim reduction plot: column to use for alpha of the edges |
| scale_alpha_with_expression | scale expression with ggplot alpha parameter |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| spatial_point_size | spatial plot: point size |
| spatial_point_border_col | color of border around points |
| spatial_point_border_stroke | stroke size of border around points |
| midpoint | size of point (cell) |
| cow_n_col | cowplot param: how many columns |
| cow_rel_h | cowplot param: relative height |
| cow_rel_w | cowplot param: relative width |
| cow_align | cowplot param: how to align |
| show_legend | show legend |
| dim_point_size | dim reduction plot: point size |
| show_plot | show plot |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

visSpatDimGenePlot_2D(gobject)

visSpatDimGenePlot_3D *visSpatDimGenePlot_3D*

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
visSpatDimGenePlot_3D(
  gobject,
  expression_values = c("normalized", "scaled", "custom"),
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  genes,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  label_size = 16,
  genes_low_color = "blue",
  genes_mid_color = "white",
  genes_high_color = "red",
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_point_size = 3,
  legend_text_size = 12,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
```

```

    y_ticks = NULL,
    z_ticks = NULL
  )

```

Arguments

| | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>plot_alignment</code> | direction to align plot |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>dim3_to_use</code> | dimension to use on z-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>genes_low_color</code> | color represent high gene expression (see details) |
| <code>genes_high_color</code> | color represent high gene expression (see details) |
| <code>nn_network_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>show_spatial_network</code> | show spatial network |
| <code>spatial_network_name</code> | name of spatial network to use |
| <code>network_color</code> | color of spatial/nn network |
| <code>spatial_network_alpha</code> | alpha of spatial network |
| <code>show_spatial_grid</code> | show spatial grid |
| <code>spatial_grid_name</code> | name of spatial grid to use |
| <code>spatial_grid_color</code> | color of spatial grid |
| <code>spatial_grid_alpha</code> | alpha of spatial grid |
| <code>legend_text_size</code> | text size of legend |
| <code>show_legend</code> | show legend |
| <code>show_plot</code> | show plot |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
visSpatDimPlot_3D(gobject)
```

visSpatDimPlot

visSpatDimPlot

Description

integration of visSpatDimPlot_2D and visSpatDimPlot_3D

Usage

```
visSpatDimPlot(
  gobject,
  plot_method = c("ggplot", "plotly"),
  plot_alignment = NULL,
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdims = NULL,
  sdims = NULL,
  sdims = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = NULL,
  label_fontface = "bold",
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  select_cell_groups = NULL,
  select_cells = NULL,
  show_other_cells = T,
  other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
  dim_point_size = 3,
  dim_point_border_col = "black",
  dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
  nn_network_alpha = NULL,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
```

```

show_spatial_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spatial_grid_color = NULL,
spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
spatial_point_size = 3,
legend_text_size = 12,
spatial_point_border_col = "black",
spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
show_legend = T,
axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
custom_ratio = NULL,
x_ticks = NULL,
y_ticks = NULL,
z_ticks = NULL,
show_plot = F
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>plot_alignment</code> | direction to align plot |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>dim3_to_use</code> | dimension to use on z-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |
| <code>color_as_factor</code> | convert color column to factor |
| <code>cell_color_code</code> | named vector with colors |
| <code>select_cell_groups</code> | select subset of cells/clusters based on <code>cell_color</code> parameter |
| <code>select_cells</code> | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| <code>show_other_cells</code> | display not selected cells |
| <code>other_cell_color</code> | color of not selected cells |
| <code>nn_network_alpha</code> | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| <code>show_spatial_network</code> | show spatial network |


```

spatial_network_name
    name of spatial network to use
spatial_network_alpha
    alpha of spatial network
show_spatial_grid
    show spatial grid
spatial_grid_name
    name of spatial grid to use
spatial_grid_color
    color of spatial grid
spatial_grid_alpha
    alpha of spatial grid
legend_text_size
    text size of legend
show_legend
    show legend
show_plot
    show plot
plot_mode
    choose the mode to draw plot : ggplot or plotly
spatial_network_color
    color of spatial network

```

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot or plotly

Examples

```
visSpatDimPlot(gobject)
```

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| visSpatDimPlot_2D | <i>visSpatDimPlot_2D</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------|

Description

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in ggplot2 mode

Usage

```

visSpatDimPlot_2D(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("vertical", "horizontal"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,

```

```

show_NN_network = F,
nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
network_name = "sNN.pca",
show_cluster_center = F,
show_center_label = T,
center_point_size = 4,
label_size = 4,
label_fontface = "bold",
cell_color = NULL,
color_as_factor = T,
cell_color_code = NULL,
select_cell_groups = NULL,
select_cells = NULL,
show_other_cells = T,
other_cell_color = "lightgrey",
dim_plot_mode = NULL,
dim_point_size = 1,
dim_point_border_col = "black",
dim_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
nn_network_alpha = 0.05,
show_spatial_network = F,
spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
spatial_network_color = NULL,
show_spatial_grid = F,
spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
spatial_grid_color = NULL,
spatial_point_size = 1,
spatial_point_border_col = "black",
spatial_point_border_stroke = 0.1,
show_legend = T,
show_plot = F,
plot_method = "ggplot"
)

```

Arguments

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>gobject</code> | giotto object |
| <code>plot_alignment</code> | direction to align plot |
| <code>dim_reduction_to_use</code> | dimension reduction to use |
| <code>dim_reduction_name</code> | dimension reduction name |
| <code>dim1_to_use</code> | dimension to use on x-axis |
| <code>dim2_to_use</code> | dimension to use on y-axis |
| <code>show_NN_network</code> | show underlying NN network |
| <code>nn_network_to_use</code> | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| <code>network_name</code> | name of NN network to use, if <code>show_NN_network = TRUE</code> |
| <code>cell_color</code> | color for cells (see details) |

| | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| select_cell_groups | select subset of cells/clusters based on cell_color parameter |
| select_cells | select subset of cells based on cell IDs |
| show_other_cells | display not selected cells |
| other_cell_color | color of not selected cells |
| nn_network_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| show_spatial_network | show spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| spatial_network_color | color of spatial network |
| show_spatial_grid | show spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| spatial_grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |
| return_plot | return ggplot object |
| save_plot | directly save the plot [boolean] |
| save_dir | directory to save the plot |
| save_folder | (optional) folder in directory to save the plot |
| save_name | name of plot |
| save_format | format of plot (e.g. tiff, png, pdf, ...) |
| show_saved_plot | load & display the saved plot |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
visSpatDimPlot_2D(gobject)
```

visSpatDimPlot_3D

*visSpatDimPlot_3D***Description**

Visualize cells according to spatial AND dimension reduction coordinates in plotly mode

Usage

```
visSpatDimPlot_3D(
  gobject,
  plot_alignment = c("horizontal", "vertical"),
  dim_reduction_to_use = "umap",
  dim_reduction_name = "umap",
  dim1_to_use = 1,
  dim2_to_use = 2,
  dim3_to_use = NULL,
  sdimx = NULL,
  sdimy = NULL,
  sdimz = NULL,
  show_NN_network = F,
  nn_network_to_use = "sNN",
  network_name = "sNN.pca",
  show_cluster_center = F,
  show_center_label = T,
  center_point_size = 4,
  label_size = 16,
  cell_color = NULL,
  color_as_factor = T,
  cell_color_code = NULL,
  dim_point_size = 3,
  nn_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_network = F,
  spatial_network_name = "spatial_network",
  network_color = "lightgray",
  spatial_network_alpha = 0.5,
  show_spatial_grid = F,
  spatial_grid_name = "spatial_grid",
  spatial_grid_color = NULL,
  spatial_grid_alpha = 0.5,
  spatial_point_size = 3,
  axis_scale = c("cube", "real", "custom"),
  custom_ratio = NULL,
  x_ticks = NULL,
  y_ticks = NULL,
  z_ticks = NULL,
  legend_text_size = 12
)
```

Arguments

gobject

giotto object

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| plot_alignment | direction to align plot |
| dim_reduction_to_use | dimension reduction to use |
| dim_reduction_name | dimension reduction name |
| dim1_to_use | dimension to use on x-axis |
| dim2_to_use | dimension to use on y-axis |
| dim3_to_use | dimension to use on z-axis |
| show_NN_network | show underlying NN network |
| nn_network_to_use | type of NN network to use (kNN vs sNN) |
| network_name | name of NN network to use, if show_NN_network = TRUE |
| cell_color | color for cells (see details) |
| color_as_factor | convert color column to factor |
| cell_color_code | named vector with colors |
| nn_network_alpha | column to use for alpha of the edges |
| show_spatial_network | show spatial network |
| spatial_network_name | name of spatial network to use |
| spatial_network_alpha | alpha of spatial network |
| show_spatial_grid | show spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_name | name of spatial grid to use |
| spatial_grid_color | color of spatial grid |
| spatial_grid_alpha | alpha of spatial grid |
| legend_text_size | text size of legend |
| spatial_network_color | color of spatial network |
| show_legend | show legend |
| show_plot | show plot |

Details

Description of parameters.

Value

plotly

Examples

```
visSpatDimPlot_3D(gobject)
```

| | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| writeHMRResults | <i>writeHMRResults</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------|

Description

write results from doHMRF to a data.table.

Usage

```
writeHMRResults(
  gobject,
  HMRFoutput,
  k = NULL,
  betas_to_view = NULL,
  print_command = F
)
```

Arguments

| | |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| gobject | giotto object |
| HMRFoutput | HMRF output from doHMRF |
| k | k to write results for |
| betas_to_view | results from different betas that you want to view |
| print_command | see the python command |

Value

data.table with HMRF results for each b and the selected k

Examples

```
writeHMRResults(gobject)
```

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| write_giotto_viewer_annotation | <i>write_giotto_viewer_annotation</i> |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

Description

write out annotation data from a giotto object for the Viewer

Usage

```
write_giotto_viewer_annotation(
  annotation,
  annot_name = "test",
  output_directory = getwd()
)
```

Arguments

annotation annotation from the data.table from giotto object
 annot_name name of the annotation
 output_directory directory where to save the files

Value

write a .txt and .annot file for the selection annotation

```

write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction
      write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction

```

Description

write out dimensional reduction data from a giotto object for the Viewer

Usage

```

write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction(
  dim_reduction_cell,
  dim_red = NULL,
  dim_red_name = NULL,
  dim_red_rounding = NULL,
  dim_red_rescale = c(-20, 20),
  output_directory = getwd()
)

```

Arguments

dim_reduction_cell dimension reduction slot from giotto object
 dim_red high level name of dimension reduction
 dim_red_name specific name of dimension reduction to use
 dim_red_rounding numerical indicating how to round the coordinates
 dim_red_rescale numerals to rescale the coordinates
 output_directory directory where to save the files

Value

write a .txt and .annot file for the selection annotation

Index

- *Topic **giotto**,
 - giotto-class, [120](#)
 - print.giotto, [165](#)
 - show,giotto-method, [174](#)
- *Topic **giotto**
 - createGiottoObject, [46](#)
- *Topic **object**
 - giotto-class, [120](#)
 - print.giotto, [165](#)
 - show,giotto-method, [174](#)
- [addCellMetadata, 6, 47](#)
- [addCellStatistics, 7, 11](#)
- [addGeneMetadata, 8, 47](#)
- [addGeneStatistics, 9, 11](#)
- [addHMRF, 10](#)
- [addNetworkLayout, 10](#)
- [addStatistics, 11](#)
- [adjustGiottoMatrix, 12](#)
- [aes_string2, 13](#)
- [all_plots_save_function, 14](#)
- [allCellCellcommunicationsScores, 13](#)
- [annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_2D, 17](#)
- [annotate_spatlocs_with_spatgrid_3D, 17](#)
- [annotateGiotto, 15](#)
- [annotateSpatialNetwork, 16](#)
- [average_gene_gene_expression_in_groups, 18](#)
- [binGetSpatialGenes, 18](#)
- [calculate_spatial_genes_python, 23](#)
- [calculateHVG, 20](#)
- [calculateMetaTable, 21](#)
- [calculateMetaTableCells, 22](#)
- [cellProximityBarplot, 24](#)
- [cellProximityEnrichment, 25](#)
- [cellProximityHeatmap, 26](#)
- [cellProximityNetwork, 27](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot, 28](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot2D, 29, 30](#)
- [cellProximitySpatPlot3D, 29, 32](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot, 34](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot_2D_ggplot, 36](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot_2D_plotly, 38](#)
- [cellProximityVisPlot_3D_plotly, 39](#)
- [changeGiottoInstructions, 41](#)
- [clusterCells, 42](#)
- [combineMetadata, 44](#)
- [convertSignListToMatrix, 45](#)
- [cowplot::save_plot, 119](#)
- [create_average_detection_DT, 55](#)
- [create_average_DT, 55](#)
- [create_cell_type_random_cell_IDs, 56](#)
- [create_cluster_matrix, 57](#)
- [create_dimObject, 57](#)
- [createGiottoInstructions, 45, 47](#)
- [createGiottoObject, 46, 231](#)
- [createHeatmap_DT, 48](#)
- [createNearestNetwork, 49](#)
- [createSpatialEnrich, 50](#)
- [createSpatialGrid, 51](#)
- [createSpatialGrid_2D, 52](#)
- [createSpatialGrid_3D, 53](#)
- [createSpatialNetwork, 54](#)
- [decide_cluster_order, 58](#)
- [detectSpatialPatterns, 59](#)
- [dimCellPlot, 60](#)
- [dimCellPlot2D, 61, 61](#)
- [dimGenePlot, 64](#)
- [dimGenePlot2D, 65](#)
- [dimGenePlot3D, 65, 67, 67](#)
- [dimPlot \(dimPlot2D\), 69](#)
- [dimPlot2D, 69, 71, 147, 149, 152, 154, 157, 159](#)
- [dimPlot3D, 64, 71, 71](#)
- [direction_test \(direction_test_CPG\), 74](#)
- [direction_test_CPG, 74](#)
- [doHclust, 74](#)
- [doHMRF, 75](#)
- [doKmeans, 77](#)
- [doLeidenCluster, 78](#)
- [doLeidenSubCluster, 79](#)
- [doLouvainCluster, 81](#)
- [doLouvainCluster_community, 82](#)
- [doLouvainCluster_multinet, 83](#)
- [doLouvainSubCluster, 84](#)

- doLouvainSubCluster_community, 86
- doLouvainSubCluster_multinet, 87
- doRandomWalkCluster, 89
- doSNNCluster, 90
- dt_to_matrix, 91
- exportGiottoViewer, 91
- exprOnlyCellCellcommunicationScores, 92
- extended_gini_fun, 93
- extractNearestNetwork, 94
- fDataDT, 94
- filterCombinations, 95, 98
- filterCPGscores, 96
- filterDistributions, 97
- filterGiotto, 98
- find_grid_2D, 107
- find_grid_3D, 107
- find_grid_x, 108
- find_grid_y, 108
- find_grid_z, 108
- findGiniMarkers, 99
- findGiniMarkers_one_vs_all, 100
- findMarkers, 101
- findMarkers_one_vs_all, 102
- findMastMarkers, 103
- findMastMarkers_one_vs_all, 104
- findScranMarkers, 105
- findScranMarkers_one_vs_all, 106
- fish_function, 108
- fish_function2, 109
- FSV_show, 109
- GenePattern_show, 110
- general_save_function, 111
- get_cell_to_cell_sorted_name_conversion, 117
- get_interaction_gene_enrichment, 117
- get_specific_interaction_gene_enrichment, 118
- getCellProximityGeneScores, 112
- getClusterSimilarity, 114
- getDendrogramSplits, 114
- getDistinctColors, 115
- getGeneToGeneScores, 116
- ggplot_save_function, 118
- giotto (giotto-class), 120
- giotto-class, 120
- Giotto::general_save_function, 15
- hyperGeometricEnrich, 51, 120
- iterCluster, 121
- iterLeidenCluster, 123
- iterLouvainCluster, 124
- iterLouvainCluster_community, 126
- iterLouvainCluster_multinet, 127
- kmeans_binarize, 128
- loadHMRf, 129
- make_simulated_network, 129
- mergeClusters, 130
- mygini_fun, 131
- nnDT_to_kNN, 131
- node_clusters, 132
- normalizeGiotto, 132
- OR_function2, 133
- PAGEEnrich, 51, 134
- pDataDT, 135
- plot_network_layer_ggplot, 161
- plot_point_layer_ggplot, 161
- plot_spat_point_layer_ggplot, 163
- plotCPGscores, 135
- plotGTGScores, 136
- plotHeatmap, 138
- plotly_axis_scale_2D, 139
- plotly_axis_scale_3D, 140
- plotly_grid, 141
- plotly_network, 141
- plotMetaDataCellsHeatmap, 142
- plotMetaDataHeatmap, 144
- plotPCA, 146
- plotPCA_2D, 147
- plotPCA_3D, 147, 149, 149
- plotTSNE, 151
- plotTSNE_2D, 152
- plotTSNE_3D, 152, 154, 154
- plotUMAP, 156
- plotUMAP_2D, 157
- plotUMAP_3D, 157, 159, 159
- print.giotto, 165
- rank_binarize, 167
- rankEnrich, 51, 166
- readGiottoInstructions, 167
- removeCellAnnotation, 168
- removeGeneAnnotation, 168
- replaceGiottoInstructions, 169
- runPCA, 169
- runTSNE, 170
- runUMAP, 171

- `select_expression_values`, 174
- `selectPatternGenes`, 173
- `show,giotto-method`, 174
- `showClusterDendrogram`, 174
- `showClusterHeatmap`, 176
- `showCPGscores`, 177
- `showGeneExpressionProximityScore`, 178
- `showGiottoInstructions`, 179
- `showGTGscores`, 179
- `showIntExpressionProximityScore`, 180
- `showPattern`, 181
- `showPattern2D`, 182, 182
- `showPattern3D`, 183
- `showPatternGenes`, 185
- `showProcessingSteps`, 186
- `showTopGeneToGene`, 186
- `signPCA`, 187
- `spatCellPlot`, 188
- `spatCellPlot2D`, 190
- `spatDimCellPlot`, 193
- `spatDimCellPlot2D`, 195
- `spatDimGenePlot`, 199
- `spatDimGenePlot2D`, 201
- `spatDimGenePlot3D`, 200, 203, 203
- `spatDimPlot`, 205
- `spatDimPlot2D`, 207, 208
- `spatDimPlot3D`, 207, 211, 212
- `spatGenePlot`, 215
- `spatGenePlot2D`, 216, 216
- `spatGenePlot3D`, 216, 218, 218
- `Spatial_AEH`, 220
- `Spatial_DE`, 221
- `spatPlot`, 222
- `spatPlot2D`, 224, 234
- `spatPlot3D`, 223, 226, 226, 235
- `specificCellCellcommunicationScores`, 228
- `split_dendrogram_in_two`, 229
- `stitchFieldCoordinates`, 47, 230
- `subClusterCells`, 231
- `subsetGiotto`, 233
-
- `viewHMRResults`, 233
- `viewHMRResults2D`, 234
- `viewHMRResults3D`, 235
- `violinPlot`, 236
- `visDimGenePlot`, 237
- `visDimGenePlot_2D_ggplot`, 239
- `visDimGenePlot_3D_plotly`, 240
- `visDimPlot`, 242
- `visDimPlot_2D_ggplot`, 244
- `visDimPlot_2D_plotly`, 246
- `visDimPlot_3D_plotly`, 248
-
- `visForceLayoutPlot`, 249
- `visGenePlot`, 251
- `visGenePlot_2D_ggplot`, 253
- `visGenePlot_3D_plotly`, 254
- `visPlot`, 234, 256
- `visPlot_2D_ggplot`, 258
- `visPlot_2D_plotly`, 261
- `visPlot_3D_plotly`, 262
- `visSpatDimGenePlot`, 264
- `visSpatDimGenePlot_2D`, 267
- `visSpatDimGenePlot_3D`, 269
- `visSpatDimPlot`, 271
- `visSpatDimPlot_2D`, 273
- `visSpatDimPlot_3D`, 276
-
- `write_giotto_viewer_annotation`, 278
- `write_giotto_viewer_dim_reduction`, 279
- `writeHMRResults`, 278